Bit by Bit

كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

NEW Hello!



2021

طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات وزارة التربية والتعليم

2nd PREP.

الصف الثانى الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

Part 1

Writing skills

How to answer

- Dialogues
- Read and correct the underlined words
- Paragraphs

معالجة للأسئلة الصعبة التى تواجه الطالب فى امتحان الصف الثانى الإعدادى

كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه فى حل سؤال المحادثة Dialogues

- ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

١- السؤال بـ (هل......؟) (Yes / No question):

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على ,Yes, / No نبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل....؟»
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً فى تكوين أى سؤال:

Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة	Modals الأفعال الناقصة
am - is - are - was - were - have - has - had	can - could - shall - should - will - would - may - might - must

- إذا كان بالجملة أى من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه فى السؤال كالآتي:

A Yes, he can play tennis.
Q Can he play tennis?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

A Yes, I played tennis.
Q Did you play tennis?

A Yes, Rana comes early.
Q Does Rana come early?

٢- السؤال بكلمة استفهام (Wh- question):

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام فى السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة (مكان - زمان - شخص - شيء - طريقة ....)

كلمة استفهام ⟵ فعل مساعد / ناقص ⟵ فاعل ⟵ فعل ......?

A She is eating **in the dining room**.
Q **Where** is she eating?

Question words

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What time	ما الوقت
Where	أين (للمكان)	What colour	ما لون
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة / ما طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للظرف - لوسيلة المواصلات)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسي		

لاحظ الآتى:

١- إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر باستخدام do - does - did.

A He has lunch at 2 o'clock.
Q When does he have lunch?

A They have a nice car.
Q What do they have?

٢- إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر.

A Sama did exercise in the morning.
Q When did Sama do exercise?

A Huda does her homework at night.
Q When does Huda do her homework?

٣- السؤال بكلمة الإستفهام (Who)

- عندما نسأل بـ Who عن الفاعل العاقل، نضعها مكان الفاعل ونكمل الجملة كما هى.

A **Ali** played tennis.
Q **Who** played tennis?

A **Ahmed** wins the game.
Q **Who** wins the game?

- عندما نسأل بها عن مفعول عاقل نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها.

A I met **Ahmed**. Q **Who** did you meet?

٤- السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (How many)

- يأتى بعدها مباشرة الاسم الذى يعد ثم الفعل المساعد / الناقص ثم الفاعل.

A I bought 5 **books**. Q **How many books** did you buy?

٥- السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام How [tall - long - wide - high - old]

Q: How tall is the house?	→	A: It's 3 metres tall.
Q: How wide is the room?	→	A: It's 5 metres wide.
Q: How high is the mountain?	→	A: It's 20 metres high.
Q: How old is Mai?	→	A: She's 10 years old.

Read and correct the underlined words

- السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل كل جملة بها خطأ واحد تحته خط (السؤال خاص بالقواعد اللغوية فقط)

mistake الخطأ	correction التصحيح
• I'd like **any** orange juice, please.	some
• Listen! She **sings** a beautiful song.	is singing
• Cairo is **noisiest** than Al Fayoum.	noisier
• How **much** cups of coffee do you drink a day?	many
• Your house is small. **Our** is big.	Ours
• **Didn't** come late.	Don't

Paragraph Writing

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرتين إنشـائيتين **(Two paragraphs)** من خمسـين (٥٠) كلمة لكل فقرة (إجمالي ١٠٠ كلمة) عن موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.
- لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيدًا.
- يكتب الطالب جملًا واضحة ليست بالطويلة ولابد أن يكون ترتيب الجملة كما يلى:

فاعل + فعل + تكملة (مفعول - حال - صفة)

- التكملة يمكـن أن تكـون صفة ويأتى قبلها فعل يكون **(am - is - are - was - were)** أو تكون التكملة مفعولاً أو حالاً مسبوقاً بفعل.

How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)

١- نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعادل كلمة صغيرة) فى أول سطر فقط.

٢- ابدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير **(capital letter)** واضح، وضع نقطة **(full stop)** واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة، اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واترك مسافة بين الكلمة والآخرى.

٣- إستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط **(v / v + s, es, ies)** عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضى البسيط **(v + d / ed / ied)** عند الحديث عن موضوع فى الماضى، وزمن المستقبل **(will + inf.)** عند الحديث عن موضوع فى المستقبل.

٤- يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل فى الكتابة.

Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

وهذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التى يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1 Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

١- نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- I go to the school, close to the sports club. الجملة خطأ ×
- I go to **a** school, close to **a** sports club. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٢- نستخدم(the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in the hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice. الجملة خطأ ×
- I stayed in **a** hotel near the station. **The** hotel was very nice. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٣- نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة الى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a teacher's question? الجملة خطأ ×
- Do you know an answer to **the** teacher's question? الجملة صحيحة ✓

٤- لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذى يُعد، أو صيغة المفرد مع الاسم الذى لا يُعد.

- The oranges give us vitamins. الجملة خطأ ×
- **Oranges** give us vitamins. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٥- يجب أن توضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة:

- I live in United States. الجملة خطأ ×
- I live in **the** United States. الجملة صحيحة ✓

2 Punctuation

١- نستخدم الحرف الكبير فى الكتابة فى الحالات الآتية:

وهذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التى تقع فيها:

- الضمير (I) فى أي مكان فى الجملة.

- i go to school early. الجملة خطأ ×
- **I** go to school early. الجملة صحيحة ✓

- الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخبرية أو السؤال.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv. الجملة خطأ ×
- **M**aged did his **h**omework and watched **TV**. الجملة صحيحة ✓
- my brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but i came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة خطأ ×

- **M**y brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but **I** came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- i can speak english and french well. الجملة خطأ ×
- **I** can speak **E**nglish and **F**rench well. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٢- توضع النقطة فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية و الأمرية.

- (.) Full stop
- (,) Commas

٣- توضع الفواصل لتعبر عن توقفات موجزة فى الجمل وبين كلمات فى قائمة وبعد No/ Yes ولا نترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عمومًا.

- After I ate I went to sleep — الجملة خطأ ×
- After I ate, I went to sleep. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

- (') Apostrophe

٤- توضع الفاصلة العليا قبل (S) الملكية للاسم المفرد.

- We met at Ali party. — الجملة خطأ ×
- We met at Ali's party. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

- توضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: let's - don't - it's ... etc

- I dont have a car. — الجملة خطأ ×
- I don't have a car. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

- (?) Question mark

٥- توضع علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car Ali — الجملة خطأ ×
- Do you have a car, Ali? — الجملة صحيحة ✓

- (!) Exclamation mark

٦- توضع علامة التعجب فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية مثل النقطة لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pity — الجملة خطأ ×
- What a pity! — الجملة صحيحة ✓

4 Common grammatical mistakes:

١- للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعل في اللغة العربية:

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays. — الجملة خطأ ×
- I often go to the club on Fridays. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

٢- إحرص على وضع ظروف التكرار **(Adverbs of frequency)** في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد فعل **be**):

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays. — الجملة خطأ ×
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays. — الجملة صحيحة ✓
- He always is early for school. — الجملة خطأ ×
- He is always early for school. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

٣- يأتي دائمًا بعد حروف الجر فعل مضافًا له **(ing)**:

- I thanked Ali for help me. — الجملة خطأ ×
- I thanked Ali for helping me. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

٤- بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل **(enjoy)** حيث أن معناها يستمتع بـ:

- I enjoyed by the film. — الجملة خطأ ×
- I enjoyed the film. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

٥- تذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل **(information / news / equipment)** يأتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:

- The information you gave me were important. الجملة خطأ ×
- The information you gave me was important. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٦- انتبه عند استخدام **('s)** مع الاسم المفرد و**(s')** مع الاسم الجمع المنتهي بـ **(s)**:

- This is Ahmeds' car. الجملة خطأ ×
- This is Ahmed's car. الجملة صحيحة ✓
- These are the boys toys. الجملة خطأ ×
- These are the boys' toys. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٧- الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها **(to)**:

- We must to eat healthy food. الجملة خطأ ×
- We must eat healthy food. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٨- لا نستخدم **(that)** بعد **(should / must)**:

- You should that study your lessons. الجملة خطأ ×
- You should study your lessons. الجملة صحيحة ✓

٩- عليك أن تفرق بين استخدام **(It's / Its)**:

- **It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)**
  = (It has + n)

- It's (It is) my book.
- It's (It is) good to be fit.
- I have a cat, it's (it has) a long tail.

- **Its** ضمير ملكية لغير العاقل

- I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

١٠- عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

- Samir and me revised for the exam. الجملة خطأ ×
- Samir and I revised for the exam. الجملة صحيحة ✓

Model question نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان

Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your day"

- وإليكم نموذج لحل هذا السؤال

I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have lunch. I play with my friends in the playground.

I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

Part 2

Scope & Sequence

Module 1: Meeting people

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and Issues
1- Coming home		Page 2
Reading: A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; The Railway Children Writing: A text message: an email reply to a friend Listening: Talks about daily routines; a description of a bedroom Speaking: Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture	**Present simple and question words (revision)** Do you like football? What do you do in your free time? Who do you live with? **Adverbs of frequency (revision)** I often listen to music on my way to school. I never have coffee for breakfast.	Life Skills: Self-management: managing time and routine Values: Co-existence values, participation, respect Issues: Citizenship: loyalty and belonging - home, family, school, country
2- How are you feeling?		Page 12
Reading: A text about night workers: descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email Writing: An email to a friend Listening: People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos Speaking: Describing photos; responding to news	**Present continuous (revision)** I'm looking after patients at a hospital. **Present continuous contrasted with the present simple (revision)** We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp. **Adverbs of manner** My sister speaks very quietly. My friend sews badly.	Life Skills: Empathy Values: Patience Issues: Preventive and therapeutic health
3- Great jobs		Page 22
Reading: An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes Writing: A paragraph about your partner's past: a text about your hero Listening: Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero Speaking: Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand	**Past time expressions (revision)** Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935. He helped to look after poor children from 1920 to 1969. **Past simple (revision)** Where did your parents live when they were young? They lived in Tanta. **used to** They used to have a small car. They didn't use to have a big car. Where did he use to live?	Life Skills: Collaboration; communication Values: Work values; love and respect for homeland and the family Issues: Citizenship; loyalty and belonging, national unity
Review A Revision of Units 1-3		Page 32

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and issues
4- Into the past		Page 34
Reading: Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about a trip to a museum; a text about ancient objects Writing: A description of a historic place; a report about a historic site Listening: A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate Speaking: Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism	**must and mustn't (revision)** You mustn't touch the stones. You must put your rubbish in the bin. **Past continuous and past simple** As we were walking into the museum, we saw some huge statues. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.	Life Skills: Environmental issues: appreciation of historic places; Self-management: being responsible for keeping historic places; Critical thinking : the pros and cons of tourism Values: Co-existence values: respect for the other; responsible behaviour Issues: Environmental and development issues: environmental responsibility
5- Helping you, helping me		Page 44
Reading: An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; A Little Princess; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project Writing: A blog post Listening: Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions Speaking: A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions	**have to / don't have to (revision)** I have to wear a uniform. My mother doesn't have to go to work today. **should / shouldn't (revision)** They should try to make friends with her. She shouldn't carry all those bags. **who, which, that, where** My aunt Dalia is a person who has always been very kind to me. It was the watch that / which my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden.	Life Skills: Participation; Collaboration: sharing Values: Work values: work ethics, perseverance; Coexistence values: compassion; sharing; Random acts of kindness Issues: Environmental and development issues: community participation
6- Different environments		Page 54
Reading: A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report Writing: A profile of where you live; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate Listening: Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism Speaking: Solving environmental problems; suggesting solutions to a problem	**Comparative adjective (revision)** The canal is more polluted than it was before. The electric buses in Alexandria are greener than the old buses. **(not) as + adjective + as** The ice isn't melting as fast as before. Australia is not as hot as Africa. **Present simple passive** Lots of cotton is grown in the area. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.	Life Skills: Negotiating; problem solving Values: Coexistence values: responsible behaviour Issues: Environmental and development issues: environmental responsibility, sustainable development
Review B Revision of Units 4-6		Page 64

Module 2: Different places

Check Your English! WB pages 70 & 71

1 Complete the questions with these words.

did - ~~does~~ - highest - if - looking - made - shouldn't - Were

1- What does an engineer do?
2- What is a teaspoon .... of?
3- If you can see yourself, what are you .... at?
4- Which is the .... mountain in the world?
5- Why .... you eat a lot of chocolate?
6- What happens .... you touch a jellyfish?
7- Where .... Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
8- .... there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers.

a. ☐ It stings you.
b. ☐ There is too much sugar in it.
c. [1] He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
d. ☐ Mount Everest
e. ☐ No, there weren't
f. ☐ on an island
g. ☐ metal (but sometimes plastic)
h. ☐ a mirror



3 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences.

1- I <u>got</u> short, curly hair.
2- That is not your bag, it is my.
3- Mariam didn't climb the mountain because she was frightening.
4- There are any peppers in the fridge.
5- Did you went to the park this morning?

4 Read the book summaries and write the missing sentences a-d in the right places

a. Some of the people are funny and some of them are scary!
b. The story moves slowly, but I like the story's message.
c. Should he talk to the man, or should he hide?
d. If he gets home on time, he will win a prize.

1 I really enjoyed this book. It is about a sailor who lived for many years on an island. In the morning, he always went for a walk on the beach alone, then, one day, he saw another person on the island! [1]☐ Read it to find out!

Robinson Crusoe



2 This book is very exciting. It is about a man who must travel quickly through many places by ship and train. It is easier to travel through some countries than others! [2]☐ It is a very difficult challenge, but will he do it?

Around the World in 80 Days.



3 In this story, an old fisherman spends many days trying to catch a big fish. He is very good at fishing and catches the fish, but when he returns home, the fish is just a skeleton. However, the other fishermen respect the old man because he tried very hard. [3]☐

The Old Man and the Sea.



4 This story is very interesting! It is about a girl who goes to a very strange place. There are a lot of very interesting people and animals in this place and she has lots of adventures. [4]a Will she find her way home?

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland



5 Ask and answer the questions about the stories in pairs.

1-Which is the only story that is not about the sea?

2-Which two stories are not only about people?

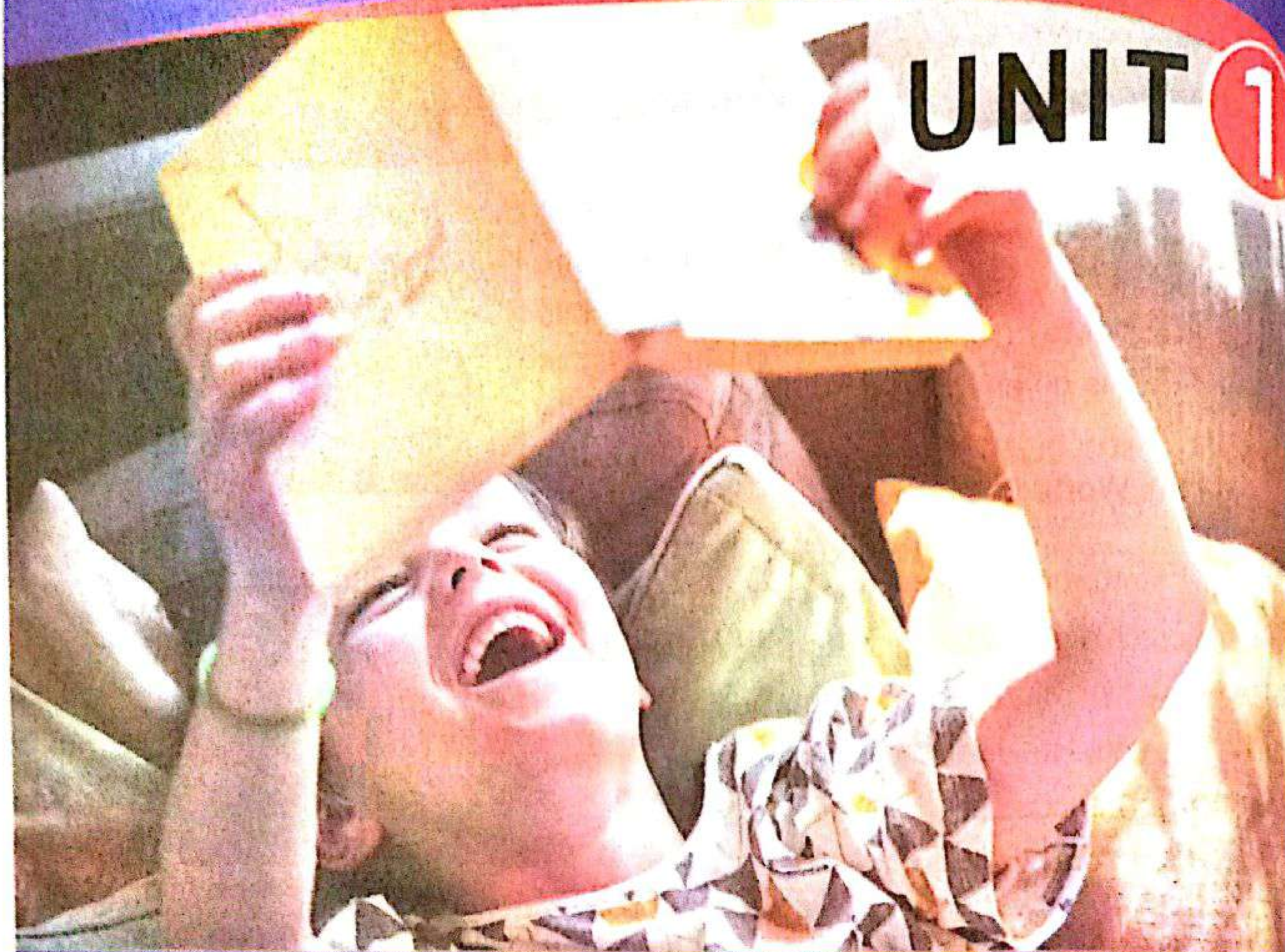
3-Which stories have forms of transport in them?

4-Which of the stories did you enjoy? Why?

6 Write a summary of another book or film that you enjoyed.

- Say what the story / film is about.
- Write about the people in the story / film and about what happens to them.
- Finish with a question or your opinion.

UNIT 1



Coming home

Objectives

Reading:
A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; The Railway Children

Writing:
A text message; an email to a penfriend

Listening:
Talks about daily routines; a description of a bedroom

Speaking:
Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture

Language:
Present simple questions

Life Skills:
Self-management: managing time and routine

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى جزء التسميع فى آخر الكتاب.

"Key Vocabulary"

daily	يومىّ	way	طريق
routine	روتين (نظام متكرر)	block of flats (n)	عمارة سكنية
sofa	أريكة (كنبة)	text (ed) (n)	يرسل رسالة نصية لـ / رسالة نصية
interview	مقابلة شخصية		
Activities			
have lunch at school	يتناول الغداء فى المدرسة	do sports	يمارس الرياضة
help to make dinner	يساعد فى إعداد العشاء	read on the sofa	يقرأ على الأريكة
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
Adverbs of frequency			
always	دائمًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
usually	عادة	never	أبدًا
often	غالبًا		

Vocabulary

school day	يوم دراسى	free time	وقت الفراغ
then	بعد ذلك	hobby	هواية
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	fun	ممتع - متعة
favourite	مفضل	interests	اهتمامات
too	أيضًا	blog	مدونة
that's why	لذلك	baker's	مخبز
subject	مادة دراسية	cook (ed)	تطهو / تطبخ
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	start (ed)	يبدأ
important	هام	prefer (red)	يُفضل

Words & Meanings

routine روتين	your usual way of doing things, especially(1) when you do them in a fixed(2) order at the same time	
interview مقابلة شخصية	a formal(3) meeting(4) in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life	
block of flats عمارة سكنية	a tall building(5) with more than one floor with flats for people to live in	

Arabic Meaning

١- خصوصا
٢- ثابت
٣- رسمي
٤- إجتماع
٥- مبني

Expressions

leave home	يغادر المنزل
come home	يأتى للمنزل
get home	يصل للمنزل
do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسى
do exercises	يؤدى تمارين
go to bed	يذهب للنوم
study hard	يذاكر بجد
have fun	يستمتع
have breakfast with	يتناول الإفطار مع
have.... for breakfast	يتناول... على الإفطار

Prepositions

get up	يستيقظ - يصحو
in bed	فى الفراش
in the (evening/ morning)	فى (المساء / الصباح)
in the holidays	فى الإجازات
by bus	بالأوتوبيس
on the right	على اليمين
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
good for	مفيد لـ...
next to	بجوار
on her way to...	فى طريقها إلى...

Words & Opposites

late	متأخرًا	early	مبكرًا	best	الأفضل	worst	الأسوأ
the same	نفس الشيء	different	مختلف	leave	يغادر	stay	يبقى

Word Differences

daily	يومىّ	dairy	مزرعة الألبان
week	أسبوع	weak	ضعيف
coffee	قهوة (مشروب)	café	مقهى (مكان)
right	اليمين	write	يكتب
way	طريق	weigh	يزن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
have	يتناول - يملك	had	had
leave	يغادر	left	left
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
take	يستقل (مركبة) - يأخذ	took	taken
spend	يقضى «وقت» / ينفق «مال»	spent	spent
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up



Language Notes

1 • Words with "the"

بعض الكلمات مثل (bed / school / hospital) لا يستخدم قبلها the إذا استخدمت للغرض الذى وجدت من أجله:

ex. Students go to school to study.

أما إذا استخدمت لغير الغرض الذى وجدت من أجله يمكن أن نستخدم the قبلها:

ex. I went to the school to ask about my son.

2 • too

تستخدم كلمة (too) بمعانى مختلفة كالتالى:

• too — أيضًا

ex. A: I'm feeling tired. B: Me, too.

• too — ... جدًا لدرجة ألا ...

ex. He is too weak to walk.

3 • arrive at • arrive in • get to

• arrive at — يصل مكان صغير «مدرسة ـ مستشفى...»

ex. Mariam arrives at school early in the morning.

• arrive in — يصل مكان كبير «دولة ـ مدينة...»

ex. When does the plane arrive in London?

• get to — يصل إلى «مكان كبير أو صغير»

ex. He got to Cairo / the hospital early.

Reading

Mariam SB Page (2)



I'm Mariam. My daily routine[1] is the same[2] every school day! I always get up[3] at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home[4] late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa[5], watch TV and text[6] my friends. Then I go to bed!

Arabic Meaning

١- الروتين اليومى
٢- نفس الشىء
٣- يستيقظ
٤- يصل للمنزل
٥- أريكة
٦- يرسل رسالة نصية

Reading

My best friend's family SB Page (4)



Hi everyone. Today's interview[1] is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right[2]!

How many people are in your family, Sherifa?

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too[3]. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves[4] home before we get up. That's why[5] he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

Do you like to study?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject[6] is English.

What do you do in the evening?

I often listen to music. My dad and I sometimes play chess[7]. My brothers always watch TV[8] and my mum usually reads.

Arabic Meaning

١- مقابلة شخصية
٢- اليمين
٣- أيضًا
٤- يغادر
٥- لذلك
٦- مادة دراسية
٧- لعبة الشطرنج
٨- يشاهد التلفاز

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to .... my friends in the evenings.
   a read b text c buy d cover
2. Hossam lives in a big .... of flats in Giza.
   a way b block c lock d part
3. I go to the baker's with my mother .... ; we always buy bread in the morning. WB
   a dairy b daily c dearly d deeply
4. Come and sit on this .... : four people can sit on it. WB
   a chair b sofa c cushion d tablet

5. I saw Ahmed's father on his .... to work this morning. WB

a stay b weight c holiday d way

6. Dina likes to .... to music in her free time.

a play b text c help d listen

7. My daily .... starts when I get up at seven.

a subject b way c time d routine

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you .... lunch at home or at school, Ali?

a have b break c build d hurt

2. Ola's parents get home late so she helps to .... dinner.

a make b do c spend d prefer

3. My dad likes to .... on the sofa in the evenings.

a swim b read c help d hurt

4. Everyone should.......... sports to keep fit.

a make b do c text d build

5. Osama has a lot of .... ; he likes reading, swimming and watching TV.

a ways b interests c times d subjects

6. The children had a lot of .... at the park last week.

a fans b fun c flats d ways

7. I had a/an .... with my best friend and her family yesterday. They answered all my questions.

a class b routine c way d interview

8. **A:** When do you get ....?
B: At half past six.

a up b to c of d on

9. Good food and exercise are good .... you.

a at b with c for d about

10. **A:** Mohamed watches much TV. **B:** Me ....

a two b toe c too d to

Grammar

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form / التكوين

(I / You / We / They / اسم جمع) → inf.مصدر الفعل.
(He / She / It / اسم مفرد) → inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es / ies.

ex. I usually go to school on time.
ex. Samir always gets home early.

لاحظ الآتى:

١- يضاف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـــ (ss/ ch / sh / o / x)

cross → crosses   watch → watches   go → goes

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بـــ y + حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies):

carry → carries   study → studies

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـــ y + حرف متحرك تبقى (y) ونضيف (s):

play → plays   buy → buys

Usage / الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

١- حقائق (facts)
ex. Ali lives in Nasr City.

٢- عادات (habits)
ex. She watches TV at night.

٣- الأعمال المعتادة (الروتينية) (daily routines)
ex. They usually sleep early.

Keywords / الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) / always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never

ex. On Saturdays, I always get up at 11 o'clock.

Negative / النفى

• ننفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلى:

(I / You / We / They / اسم جمع) → don't + inf.
(He / She / It / اسم مفرد) → doesn't + inf.

ex. We don't listen to music in the mornings.
ex. Osman doesn't get up at 7 a.m.

لاحظ الآتى:

يمكن أن ننفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط بوضع كلمة (never) قبل الفعل دون تغيير فيه.
ex. He never goes to school late.

Question / السؤال

للسؤال بـــ «هل..؟» في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم Do / Does كما يلي:

Do + (I / you / we / they / اسم جمع) + inf...?
Does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + inf ....?

ex. Do you usually watch TV after nine?
Yes, I do. الإجابة في الاثبات / **No,** I don't. الإجابة في النفي

ex. Does he sometimes text his friends?
Yes, he does. / **No,** he doesn't.

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

ex. When do they get home? - They get home at eight.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ______ English and maths on Tuesdays.
a study b studying c studies d are studying

2. Does Hossam ________ to school late?
a is coming b comes c coming d come

3. Sherehan usually ________ TV at night.
a watch b watches c watching d is watching

2 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

100%	always	I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. استيقظ دائما في الساعة ٦,٣٠ صباحًا. (طوال الوقت)
80%	usually	Ahmed usually plays football. يلعب أحمد عادةً كرة القدم. (في أوقات كثيرة)
70%	often	Sara often watches TV in the evenings. تشاهد سارة التلفاز غالبًا في المساء. (في أغلب الأوقات)
50%	sometimes	My mother sometimes listens to music. أمي أحيانًا تستمع للموسيقى. (أحيانًا)
10%	occasionally	It occasionally rains in the summer. انها تمطر من حين لآخر في الصيف. (نادرًا ما يحدث ذلك)
0%	never	We never go to school on Fridays. لا نذهب للمدرسة أيام الجمعة. (لا يحدث ابدًا)

لاحظ الآتى:

١- تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى.

ex. We usually get home late.

وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be)

ex. Mariam is never late for school.

٢- نستخدم (How often....?) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل ما كما يلى:

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf.....?

ex. How often do you read on the sofa?

• للإجابة نستخدم ظرف التكرار المناسب حسب درجة تكرار الفعل.

ex. I always read on the sofa. (100%) أنا دائمًا أقرأ على الأريكة.

ex. I never read on the sofa. (0%) أنا لا أقرأ أبدًا على الأريكة.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... Mr Hassan for help.
   a always ask   b ask always   c always asks   d asks always
2. A: How .... do you study at night? B: Always.
   a many   b much   c deep   d often

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

WB

1. Hamdi doesn't .... coffee for breakfast.
   a drinking   b drink   c is drinking   d drinks
2. Students in Egypt .... go to school in August. It's a holiday.
   a never   b often   c usually   d always
3. Ali is a very clever student. He .... studies hard.
   a never   b always   c not   d sometimes
4. A: How .... do you have lunch at home? B: Always.
   a many   b much   c often   d old
5. Doaa .... her mother make dinner.
   a helps usually   b usually help   c help usually   d usually helps
6. Sara likes numbers so much. She .... gets high marks in the maths exams.
   a always   b never   c no   d doesn't
7. People .... swim in the sea when it is too cold.
   a often   b usually   c never   d always

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I like milk. I **never** drink it. (..............)
2. **A:** How **many** do you listen to music? **B:** Never. (..............)
3. They **watch usually** TV in the evenings. (..............)
4. My brother **not have** a mobile. (..............)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ...... my homework before I have my dinner. WB
   a do usually b usually do c does usually d usually does
2. Habiba is my best friend. I ...... sit next to her in my lessons.
   a never b usually c don't d not
3. I ...... drink orange juice. It is so delicious.
   a always b no c never d don't
4. What time .... your first lesson start? WB
   a do b does c doing d is
5. Ahmed .... sees his sister because she lives so far away.
   a doesn't b never c don't d not
6. **A:** How .... do you text your friends? **B:** Always.
   a much b many c deep d often
7. He never comes on time because he .... usually wake up early.
   a never b doesn't c don't d not
8. Mothers .... love their children.
   a sometimes b never c don't d always
9. I don't have a mobile, so I .... text my friends.
   a always b usually c no d never
10. Doctors .... wear white coats at hospitals.
    a sometimes b never c always d don't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **A:** Does Mariam listen to music on the bus? Yes, she **do**. SB (..............)
2. How **always** do you come home early? (..............)
3. Ali likes reading. He **never** reads. (..............)
4. Ahmed **texts never** his friends in the evenings. (..............)

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى جزء التسميع فى آخر الكتاب.

"Key Vocabulary"

attractive	جذّاب / جميل	tap	صنبور (حنفية)
large	كبير	typical	نموذجى (معتاد)
terrible	فظيع ـ بشع	village	قرية
railway line	خط سكة حديد	near	قريب (من)
poor	فقير	feed (fed / fed)	يُطعم
prison	سجن	share (d)	يتقاسم ـ يشارك

Important meanings & Opposites

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
attractive	جذاب	beautiful	ugly	قبيح
large	كبير	big	small	صغير
near	قريب (من)	close	far from	بعيد عن
terrible	فظيع	bad	good	جيد

Vocabulary

life (pl - lives)	حياة	still	ما زال
India	دولة الهند	later	فيما بعد
outside	خارجى	adventure	مغامرة
cup	فنجان - كأس	finally	أخيرًا
job	مهمة ـ وظيفة	together	معًا
chicken	دجاجة	(be) called	يُسمى ـ يُدعى
end	نهاية ـ طرف	the country	الريف
Odd one out	اخرج الشيء المختلف (اسم لعبة)	move (d)	ينتقل
Role-play	لعب الأدوار (إسم لعبة)	remember (ed)	يتذكر
watermelon	بطيخ	borrow (ed)	يستعير

Words & Meanings

prison	سجن	a place where people go when they do something wrong
tap	صنبور	something you turn on or off to get water
railway line	خط سكة حديد	the metal 'road' that a train travels on

feed	يطعم	give food to a person, group or animal
poor	فقير	not having enough money to live well
large	كبير	big

Expressions

have a job	لديه مهمة
do a job	يؤدى مهمة
do something wrong	يرتكب خطأ
take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيدًا
have adventures	يمر بمغامرات
in prison for	فى السجن من أجل
water plants	يروى الزرع

Prepositions

share ... with	يتقاسم ... مع
have ... with	يتناول ... مع
careful with	حريص من
at the end of ...	عند نهاية ...
for children	مخصص للأطفال
in many ways	بطرق كثيرة
travel on a train	يسافر على متن قطار
at last	أخيرًا
move from ... to	ينتقل من ... إلى
full of	مملوء بـ

Words & Opposites

outside	خارجى	inside	داخلى	happy	سعيد	sad	حزين
borrow	يستعير	lend	يُقرض(يسلف)	poor	فقير	rich	غنى
better	أفضل	worse	أسوأ	kind	عطوف	unkind	غير عطوف

Word Differences

tap	صنبور (حنفية)	tape	شريط لاصق
cup	فنجان / كأس	cap	قبعة (كاب)
feed	يُطعم	eat	يأكل
the country	الريف	country	دولة
share	يشارك	chair	مقعد (كرسى)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
tell	يُخبر	told	told
know	يعرف	knew	known
become	يصبح	became	become
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Unit 1

cut	يقطع / يقص	cut	cut
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
forget	يَنسى	forgot	forgotten



Language Notes

1 ➤ • The relative pronouns "who" and "where"

• تُستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) لتحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذى ـ التى ـ الذين ـ اللاتى» (وفى هذه الحالة يأتى بعدها فعل):

ex. A kind **man**, **who** travels on the train every day, became my friend.

• تستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) أيضًا لتحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفى هذه الحالة يأتى بعدها اسم أو ضمير):

ex. **Alaa**, **who** I like, is my friend.

• تستخدم ضمير الوصل (where) لتشير إلى المكان بمعنى «حيث»:

ex. There is a tap at the end of **the street where** we live.

2 ➤ • forget

• **forget + to + inf.** — ينسى أن يفعل...

ex. I **forgot to call** Ali yesterday, so he was angry with me today.

• **forget + v-ing.** — يفعل... ثم ينسى أنه فعل

ex. I **forgot calling** Ali yesterday, so I called him again today.

Reading

Lives around the world — **SB Page (6)**

Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies[1] and interests?
- What is a typical[2] day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India[3]. I live in a village[4] with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share[5] a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside[6] tap[7] at the end[8] of the street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup[9] of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed[10] the chickens[11] then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.



Arabic Meaning

١- هوايات
٢- نموذجى (معتاد)
٣- دولة الهند
٤- قرية
٥- يتقاسم
٦- خارجى
٧- صنبور
٨- نهاية
٩- فنجان
١٠- يُطعم
١١- دجاج

Reading

SB Page (7)

Hi Amal. Have you got that game called Odd one out?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other[1] children's games? My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Yes, I have Role-play[2]! Do you remember that game?

Yes, I do! Shall I borrow[3] it this evening? My cousin would love it!

Of course. Can I play it, too? It's better[4] with three people, and I still[5] enjoy that game.

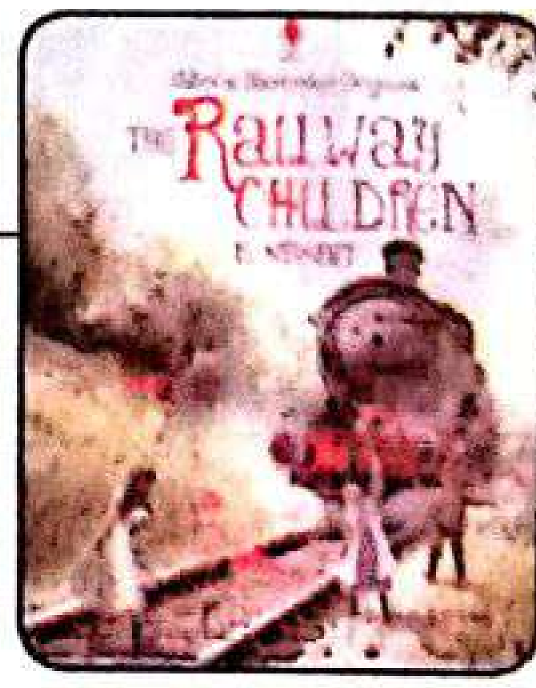
Of course! You can come to my house later.

Arabic Meaning

١- أخرى
٢- لعب الادوار
٣- يستعير
٤- أفضل
٥- مازال

Reading

The Railway Children by E Nesbit **SB Page (8)**



It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive[1] home with a large[2] garden. One terrible[3] day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.

The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line[4]. The family are poor[5] and life is very different[6] for them. The children have lots of adventures[7] near the railway line. A kind[8] old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes[9] their friend.

The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison[10] for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

Arabic Meaning

١- جذاب
٢- كبير
٣- فظيع - بشع
٤- خط سكة حديد
٥- فقير
٦- مختلف
٧- مغامرات
٨- عطوف
٩- يصبح
١٠- سجن

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like visiting the country in Sharkia. It is ....
   a terrible   b horrible   c attractive   d bad
2. Two men escaped from .... last week.
   a prison   b school   c work   d university
3. On a .... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop. WB
   a careful   b typical   c helpful   d famous
4. Her family was very .... They couldn't buy her a new dress.
   a attractive   b rich   c happy   d poor
5. Roberta's family home has a .... garden full of flowers and trees. WB
   a careful   b helpful   c large   d cheap
6. One .... day, Hassan had an accident and people took him to hospital.
   a wonderful   b nice   c good   d terrible
7. My uncle has a .... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants every evening. WB
   a cap   b tap   c tape   d map

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of "attractive" is .... WB
   a small   b good   c beautiful   d ugly
2. I like to have bread with a .... of tea.
   a cap   b cup   c tap   d tape
3. The two men had an interesting .... in the forest last week.
   a flight   b adventure   c address   d text

4. The travellers got home late because there was a problem along the railway ....

a row   b line   c tap   d farm

5. The farmer doesn't need to .... his goats in the summer, as they can find their own food in the mountains. WB

a eat   b feed   c prefer   d plant

6. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a small .... in the country. WB

a team   b factory   c river   d village

7. We can play football in the garden. It's really ....

a small   b large   c ugly   d little

8. A .... is a place where people go when they do something wrong. SB

a hospital   b prison   c theatre   d beach

9. People without enough money are .... SB

a healthy   b poor   c strong   d careless

10. The men were scared because the room was full .... smoke.

a at   b on   c of   d off

Grammar

Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have .... got)

- ذكرنا فى الدرسين (١ ، ٢) أن السؤال بـــ (هل...؟) يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص:

ex. Do you live in Giza?

ex. Will Habiba come home tomorrow?

تذكر الأفعال الناقصة / المساعدة

am	is	are	was
were	have	has	will
would	can	could	shall
should	may	might	must

Can...?

تستخدم (Can) للسؤال بمعنى (هل من الممكن أن...؟ / هل تستطيع أن...؟):

ex. Can I borrow your book today?

Shall I / we......?

نستخدم (Shall) للسؤال لتقديم العروض / للاقتراح / لطلب النصح:

ex. Shall I carry your bag? **(Offer)**

ex. Shall I call again on Tuesday? **(Suggestion)**

ex. What shall we do with that problem? **(Asking for advice)**

- تذكر أن (Shall) تستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

Have / Has.... got...?

تستخدم (Have / Has.... got) للسؤال بمعنى (هل... يملك....؟):

ex. Have you got any new game?

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... you got a camera? I need to take a photo.
   a Has b Have c Shall d Can
2. .... I have some water, please?
   a Can b Do c Must d Have
3. .... I help you to cut the watermelon?
   a Has b Have c Am d Shall

Exercises on Lessons (3) & (4)

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Grandma, ... you got a watermelon? SB
   a shall b can c has d have
2. Hi! ...... we play a game next weekend? SB
   a Have b Do c Shall d Has
3. ...... I have a sandwich, please?
   a Can b Did c Do d Shall
4. ...... we go out today?
   a Did b Shall c Have d Do
5. ...... your father got a computer? WB
   a Do b Shall c Can d Has
6. ...... you help me lift this heavy box?
   a Can b Have c Do d Shall
7. ...... I help you carry your books? WB
   a Am b Does c Have d Shall

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. <u>Can</u> you got any cousins? WB (............)
2. <u>Do</u> you get me some juice, please? (............)
3. I have some guests, what <u>have</u> I cook? (............)
4. <u>Have</u> we go to the park tomorrow? (............)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ...... you take me to the airport, dad?
   a Has b Is c Can d Do
2. ...... your father got a blue car? WB
   a Have b Has c Can d Shall
3. A: ...... your dad play chess? B: Yes, he is clever at it.
   a Has b Is c Do d Can

4. ------ you got science or maths today?
   a Has b Shall c Can d Have
5. ------ I put this wet umbrella on the sofa?
   a Shall b Has c Does d Am
6. ------ we go to the cinema today?
   a Have b Has c Shall d Are
7. ------ Salah help me with my computer problem?
   a Am b Is c Have d Can
8. ------ I bring you a glass of juice?
   a Do b Am c Shall d Have
9. ------ you got any time today?
   a Has b Have c Are d Do
10. ------ Mr Hossam drive a bus?
   a Do b Can c Is d Has

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What <u>have</u> we do if Ali doesn't come? (----------)
2. <u>Am</u> I see your passport, please? (----------)
3. This is a nice restaurant. <u>Do</u> we eat here, Hassan? WB (----------)
4. <u>Are</u> we help Ahmed with his problem? (----------)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your daily routine"

Lessons 5 & 6

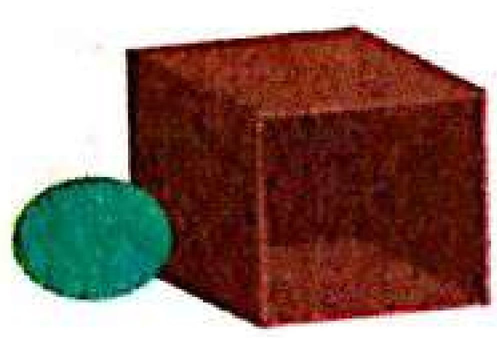
SB pages 9-10 WB pages 76-77

"Key Vocabulary"

armchair	كرسى بمسندين	basin	حوض
bookshelf	رف للكتب	carpet	سجادة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	curtains	ستائر
lamp	أباچورة / مصباح	mirror	مرآة
sofa	أريكة (كنبة)	wardrobe	دولاب (الملابس)
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	cushion	وسادة (مخدة)

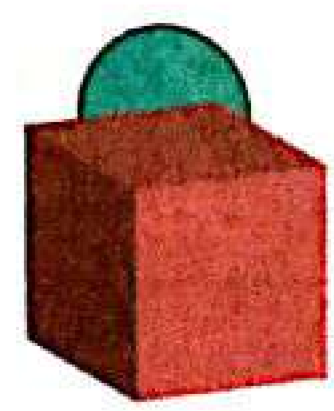
Prepositions of place

next to بجوار



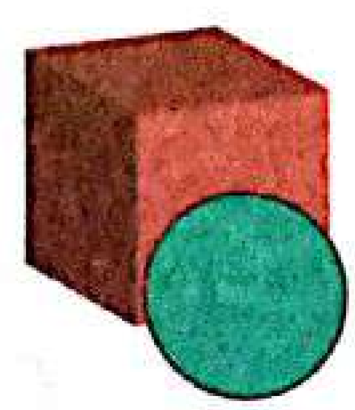
ex. The ball is next to the box.

behind خلف



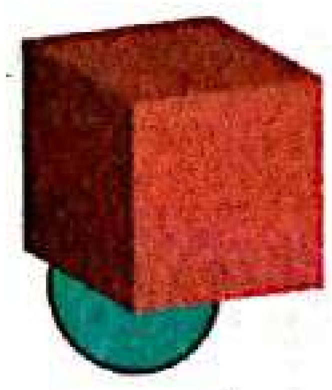
ex. The ball is behind the box.

in front of أمام



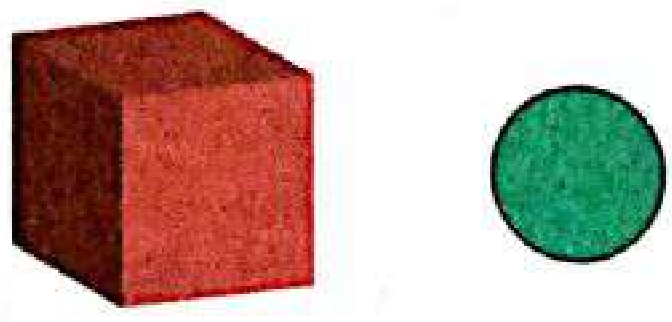
ex. The ball is in front of the box.

under تحت



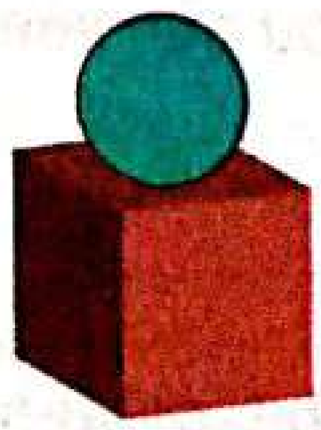
ex. The ball is under the box.

opposite أمام - فى مقابل



ex. The ball is opposite the box.

on على



ex. The ball is on the box.

in فى - داخل



ex. The ball is in the box.

Vocabulary

bedroom	غرفة نوم	downstairs	الطابق السفلى
beautiful	جميل	Germany	دولة ألمانيا
nearby	قريب	but	لكن
break	فترة راحة	bathroom	حمام
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	Cambridge	مدينة كامبريدج
Oxford	مدينة أكسفورد	information	معلومات
Best wishes	أطيب أمنياتى	profile	ملف شخصي
face	وجه	hope (d)	يأمل
penfriend	صديق مراسلة	describe (d)	يصف
corner	ركن	practise (d)	يمارس
restaurant	مطعم	match (ed)	يتماشى مع / يلائم
grey	رمادي		

Words & Meanings

armchair كرسي بمسندين	a large comfortable[1] chair with parts[2] to put your arms on
basin حوض	a bowl[3] for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc
carpets سجاد	these are on the floor
wardrobe دولاب الملابس	a large cupboard in which you can put your clothes
curtains ستائر	they are next to your windows and you close them at night
mirror مرآه	a piece of special[4] glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you
lamp أباچورة	something that gives light
chest of drawers خزانة ذات أدراج	a piece of furniture[5] with drawers[6] (boxes with handles[7] on them) to put things in

Arabic Meaning

1- مريح
2- أجزاء
3- وعاء
4- خاص
5- أثاث
6- أدراج
7- مقابض

Expressions

like.... best	يحب.... جداً
practise English	يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية
play music	يعزف موسيقى
take photos	يلتقط صور
get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه
(be) a short walk from	على مسافة تمشية قصيرة من
sleep with the curtains open	ينام والستائر مفتوحة

Prepositions

belong to	يخص / ينتمى لـ
help.... with...	يساعد... فى.....
look at	ينظر فى
learn from	يتعلم من
have lessons	لديه دروس
far from	بعيد عن
hear from	يتلقي أخبار أو خطابات من
look out of	ينظر خارج....
on the front	فى المقدمة
on the floor	علي الأرضية
thank .... for	يشكر ...... علي

Word Differences

wardrobe	دولاب «الملابس»	cupboard	دولاب «الملابس - الأطباق... إلخ»
lamp	أباجورة / مصباح	lamb	خروف صغير «حمل»
armchair	كرسى «بمسندين»	chair	كرسى «بدون بمسندين»

Words & Opposites

best أفضل	worst أسوأ	downstairs بالطابق السفلي	upstairs بالطابق العلوى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
go	يذهب	went	gone
send	يرسل	sent	sent
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Language Notes

1 ➤ • love • would love

يتبع الفعل (love) فعلاً مضافًا له (V-ing) أو (to + inf):

ex. I love taking / to take photos of the birds.

يتبع (would love) (to + inf.):

ex. I'd love to visit the nature reserves near El Fayaum.

2 ➤ • information • advice • news

تعامل كلمات (معلومات information / نصيحة advice / أخبار news) معاملة المفرد ولا نضع أمامهم أدوات نكرة a/an ويليهم فعل لفاعل مفرد (v+s - is - was - does - has):

ex. The information he gave me was important.

Tapescript SB Page (9)

Boy: My room is small, but it's really attractive. I have the lamp*(1) on a bookshelf(2) next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe*(3) with a mirror(4) on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains*(5)? The colour matches(6) the carpet(7). The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.

Girl: My bed is under the window. There are a lot of cushions(8) on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair(9). I keep all my clothes in the chest(10) of drawers. Our bathroom(11) is downstairs(12), but I have a basin(13) in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.

Arabic Meaning

1- اباجورة
2- رف للكتب
3- دولاب (للملابس)
4- مرآة
5- ستائر
6- يتماشى مع
7- سجادة
8- وسائد
9- كرسي بمسندين
10- خزانة ذات ادراج
11- حمام
12- في الطابق الاسفل
13- حوض

Say it correctly

* lamp — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (cat)
* curtains — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (curly)
* wardrobe — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (saw)

Reading

SB Page (10)

New Message

Dear Rebecca,

It is very nice to meet you. My name is Judy. I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves*[1] nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs[2].

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping[3], then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects[4] are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[5]. I am happy to be able to practise[6] my English!

I hope to hear from you soon,

Judy

Send

Arabic Meaning
١- محميات طبيعية
٢- بالطابق السفلي
٣- التسوق
٤- مواد دراسية
٥- صديق مراسلة
٦- يمارس

Say it correctly

* reserve

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت /z/

Reading

SB Page (11)

New Message

Hi Abdul!

Thanks for[1] being my penfriend. I'm from England[2], I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast[3] for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sports or play music. I don't watch TV when I get home, I always do my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical[4] daily routine[5] in Germany?

Send

Arabic Meaning
١- شكرا علي
٢- دولة إنجلترا
٣- الإفطار
٤- معتاد
٥- روتين يومي

Reading

SB Page (11)

New Message

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I don't have breakfast before school. There is a 'breakfast break' after the first lesson. How many lessons does your school have every day?

Send

Tapescript WB Page (76)

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight[1] in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed, they have a big wardrobe. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also a sofa next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of drawers. This is next to the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at[2] herself in it!

Arabic Meaning

١- ضوء الشمس

٢- تنظر إلى

Reading

WB Page (77)

New Message

Hi Tamer

Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near El Faiyoum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge, but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English. Please write to me again soon.

yours,

Oliver

Send

Reading

WB Page (77)

New Message

Hi Leila

Thank you for sending me your profile[1]. Here is some information[2] about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden[3]. Does your home have a garden?

Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends.

I love taking photos[4] of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk[5] from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes

Mariana

Send

Arabic Meaning

١- ملف شخصى
٢- معلومات
٣- حديقة
٤- التقاط الصور
٥- تمشية

Reading

SB Page (11)

I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on this. I close them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks and other clothes in this. Finally, there is a big carpet on the floor!

Exercises on Lessons (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... gives you light.
   a lamp b lamb c lake d leaf
2. I usually close the .... of my room at night.
   a beds b sofas c curtains d carpets
3. Hala keeps her books on a big .... over there.
   a booklet b bookstore c bookshop d bookshelf
4. Ali closed the door and sat in a/an .... next to the window.
   a curtain b basin c armchair d mirror
5. We keep things such as clothes in a/an ....
   a mirror b sofa c bottle d chest of drawers
6. Five people can sit on that .... at the same time.
   a sofa b chair c armchair d lamp
7. We live in a building .... the Giza Zoo.
   a in front b opposite c next d in

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can see yourself in a/an ....
   a armchair b wardrobe c mirror d basin
2. I always leave my keys .... the table over there.
   a in b on c out d onto
3. It was too dark, so I switched on the ....
   a lamp b lamb c mirror d curtain
4. A/An .... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.
   a wardrobe b chair c lamp d sofa
5. To protect animals, we keep them in a ....
   a nature reserve b country c river d mountain
6. We cover the floor of my bedroom with a big ....
   a basin b mirror c carpet d curtain
7. The post office is .... to the cinema.
   a next b in front c opposite d on

8. To make your English better, ------- it inside and outside school.

a take b dress c stay d practise

9. A: Who does this red car belong -------? B: It's Ahmed's.

a to b for c out d off

SB

10. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of ------- on it!

a cushions b news c information d tables



Language Functions

Types of questions

• يوجد فى اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

1 Yes / No Questions

• هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل: (be / do / have / will / can) ونجيب عنها بـ (Yes) أو (No)

ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

2 Wh- Questions

• هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What class	ما الصف الدراسى
Where	أين (للمكان)	What time	ما الوقت
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What colour	ما لون
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة / كم طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات

تذكر الآتى:

- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلى:

(كلمة استفهام) 1 + فعل مساعد ناقص 2 + فاعل 3 + فعل رئيسى 4 + تكملة ...؟

What do you do in the mornings?

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid : How are you, Nabil?

Nabil : I'm fine, thanks.

Khalid : How ❶ .... people are there in your fa...

Nabil : There are three people: me, Mum and Dad.

Khalid : When do you get ❷ ....

Nabil : I usually get up at half past six. Mum and Dad get up at six.

Khalid : ❸ .... you help your mum make break...

Nabil : Yes, I do.

Khalid : Do you ❹ .... to stu...

Nabil : Yes, I do. My favourite ❺ .... is scie...

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. .... I watch TV in the evenings.

   a Do b Never c Not d Sometimes

2. .... do you think of that book?

   a How b What c How much d How often

3. Dina is helpful. She .... refuses to help me with my homework.

   a always b never c often d not

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **A:** Does Amany <u>has</u> a car? **B:** Yes, she has a new one. (..........)
2. <u>When</u> time do you get up, Omar? (..........)

Writing Skills

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 Your daily routine

I'm thirteen years old. My daily routine is the same every day. I like getting up early, so I always get up at 6 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I always help her make it. Then I have a shower and put on my school uniform.

I always go to school by bus with my friends Ali and Ahmed. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the nearby hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and text my friends. I always go to bed at 9.

2 What you and your family usually do in the holidays

There are five people in my family: me, mum, dad and my two brothers. We don't usually have a routine in the holidays. I get up at 11. My mum is a housewife. I always help her make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad is a dentist. He usually takes us to a nearby park.

We always play and have fun when we go there. We have lunch and take a lot of selfies there. We go home at about four o'clock. In the evenings, I often listen to music. My dad and I sometimes play chess. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

3 A description of your bedroom

We have a big family house. I like it so much. I really like my bedroom. There is always lots of sunshine when I open the curtains. I like seeing the sunshine when I get up. My bed is under the windows. I have a big wardrobe in front of the bed. I put my clothes in it.

There is also a sofa next to the window. I always read my favourite books on it. I put my things in a big chest of drawers. This is next to the door. I don't have a basin in my bedroom because the bathroom is next to my room. I have a big mirror. I always like to look at myself in it!

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary Review

daily	يومىّ	interview	مقابلة شخصية	large	
routine	روتين (نظام متكرر)	way	طريق	terrible	بشع
sofa	أريكة (كنبة)	poor	فقير	railway line	ة حديد
typical	نموذجى (معتاد)	prison	سجن	near	(من)
village	قرية	armchair	كرسى بمسندين	nature reserve	طبيعية
tap	صنبور (حنفية)	bookshelf	رف للكتب	curtains	
lamp	أباجورة / مصباح	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	cushion	(مخدة)
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	basin	حوض	share (d)	م- يشارك
mirror	مرآة	carpet	سجادة	feed (fed / fed)	
wardrobe	دولاب (الملابس)	attractive	جذّاب / جميل	text (ed) (n)	رسالة / رسالة

Activities

have lunch at school	يتناول الغداء فى المدرسة	do sports	الرياضة
help to make dinner	يساعد فى إعداد العشاء	read on the sofa	لى الأريكة
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	text friends	رسائل للأصدقاء

Adverbs of frequency

always	دائمًا	often	غالبًا	never
usually	عادة	sometimes	أحيانًا	

Prepositions of place

next to	بجوار	in front of	أمام	opposite	في مقابل
behind	خلف	under	تحت	on	
in	فى - داخل				

Grammar Review

1- The present simple tense

ن زمن المضارع البسيط من الفعل فى المصدر ويضاف له (s / es / ies) مع المفرد الغائب:

ex. We go to school early.

ex. He comes home at 7.

تخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبيرعن عادات / حقائق / روتين:

ex. Hamdi always smokes at home.

ex. Nada is a dentist.

- من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط:

always - often - usually - sometimes - every - never

- ننفي الفعل من زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام (don't / doesn't / never).

- I don't / never play tennis.

- للسؤال عن فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط تستخدم:

(كلمة استفهام) + do / does + فاعل + فعل...?

- Do you live in Tanta?

2- Adverbs of frequency

- تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

always ⟶ usually ⟶ often ⟶ sometimes ⟶ never

(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (0%)

- تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى / بعد فعل (be).

ex. Habiba always sleeps in the afternoons.

ex. Ahmed is never late for school.

- تستخدم (How often ...?) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل.

ex. How often do you study in the evenings?

3- Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have .... got)

- تذكر أن السؤال بـــ (هل...؟) يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص:

ex. Does Heba listen to music?

Can...?

- تستخدم (Can) للسؤال بمعنى (هل من الممكن أن...؟ / هل تستطيع أن.....؟):

ex. Can you climb that tree?

Shall I / we......?

- نستخدم (Shall) للسؤال لتقديم العروض / للاقتراح / لطلب النصح:

ex. Shall I carry your bag? **(Offer)**

ex. Shall we go to the zoo? **(Suggestion)**

ex. What shall I do when dad arrives? **(Asking for advice)**

- تذكر أن (Shall) تستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

Have / Has.... got...?

- تستخدم (Have / Has.... got) للسؤال بمعنى (هل... يملك.....؟):

ex. Have you got a good camera?

Language Functions Review

Types of questions

يوجد فى اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

1 Yes /No Questions

هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل: (be / do / can / have / will) ونجيب عنها (Yes) أو (No)

ex. **Did** you go to the park? Yes, I **did**. / No, I **didn't**.

2 Wh- Questions

هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام ويتم تكوين السؤال بها كما يلي:

① (كلمة استفهام) + ② فعل مساعد ناقص + ③ فاعل + ④ فعل رئيسى + تكملة ...?

When do you get up?

General Exercises on Unit 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samah : Hello, Mariam. Could you tell me about your daily routine?

Mariam : Yes, sure. My daily routine is the same ❶ ------------------ day

Samah : ❷ -- do you get up

Mariam : I get up at 6.30 in the morning.

Samah : ❸ ------------------------------------ makes your breakfast

Mariam : My mum always makes my breakfast.

Samah : How do you go to school?

Mariam : I always go to school ❹ ------------------------------------

Samah : When do you get home?

Mariam : I usually get home ❺ ------------------------------------

2 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Roberta's family home in the city is big and .... I like going there. WB
   a little b ugly c attractive d terrible
2. Mum never sleeps before she ...... my little sister.
   a eats b feeds c kills d hurts
3. The opposite of "terrible" is .... WB
   a good b far c small d ugly
4. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can .... our food. WB
   a check b share c damage d change
5. I watched an interesting .... with an Olympic player yesterday.
   a lesson b film c play d interview
6. In my bedroom, the mirror is .... of the bed.
   a next b opposite c in front d on
7. ....you got any English friends?
   a Do b Can c Have d Shall
8. The sofa is next .... the chest of drawers.
   a to b for c of d on
9. .... time does Don's school finish? WB
   a When b What c Where d How
10. Hassan is a clever boy. He .... gets full marks.
    a never b not c does d always
11. Roberta feels .... when some men take their father from their home. She doesn't know where he is going or why. WB
    a happy b cheerful c terrible d great
12. Thank you .... the present you gave me.
    a out b for c to d in
13. The hotel was ...., so the tourists left it.
    a nice b comfortable c terrible d fantastic
14. Roberta's new house is in the country near a railway .... WB
    a club b line c tree d classroom
15. This family do not have much money and now they are .... WB
    a happy b poor c rich d excited

3 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali is a lazy student. He <u>always</u> gets up early. (............)
2. **A:** How <u>much</u> do you go to school? **B:** Five times a week. (............)
3. <u>Have</u> Hamada got a laptop? (............)

4. Has Noha **get** an English penfriend? (..........)
5. I **go usually** to the club at the weekend. (..........)
6. All teachers like Gehad because she is **never** polite. (..........)

4 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on: (Writing skills ...في جزء

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

....

....

TEST 1 UNIT 1

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother and .... live in Alex.
   a grandfather   b father   c mother   d sister
2. They live next to the ....
   a river   b lake   c beach   d mountain
3. They have a beautiful ....
   a car   b bus   c taxi   d house
4. It takes .... hours to go to Alex.
   a eleven   b ten   c nine   d twelve

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma : Where are you from?
Dina : I'm ❶ .... El Faiyo...
Salma : Is El Faiyoum a beautiful city?
Dina : Yes, it is. It has beautiful nature ❷ ....
Salma : ❸ .... do you live wit...
Dina : I live with my parents and my brothers.
Salma : What are your favourite ❹ ....
Dina : My favourite subjects are maths and English.
Salma : Nice to meet you.
Dina : Nice to meet you, ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Aya. My bedroom is wide and bright. I keep it clean and tidy because it is my favourite room in the house. Its walls are white and the floor is brown. On the floor, there is a big blue carpet. I have two sofas, a table and an armchair. I also have a small chest of drawers where I put my clothes. I enjoy reading so there is a bookshelf with many books on it. On the bookshelf there is a vase with a small plant and an old clock.

There are two windows and both of them have got lovely curtains I made myself. I like to read and have a rest in my bedroom. It's warm and comfortable.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What colour are the walls of Aya's bedroom?

----

2. What does Aya like to do in her bedroom?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Aya puts her books on a ---------.

a bookshelf b sofa c table d carpet

4. Aya's favourite room in the house is the ---------.

a kitchen b bedroom c living room d dining room

5. There is a big --------- carpet on the floor.

a yellow b white c black d blue

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. --------- you got a mobile? I need to text my parents.

a Has b Does c Have d Do

2. Hassan is really kind. He --------- his toys with his friends.

a checks b happens c shares d cleans

3. Your village is warm and clean. It is really ---------.

a ugly b attractive c terrible d dirty

4. --------- often do you help to make dinner?

a How b Why c When d Who

5. A kind old man helps Roberta's father to leave ...., and the family are happy to be together again.

a museum　b prison　c bed　d mosque

6. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family ... to have a ....

a line　b routine　c subject　d season

7. Can you .... my mother for me, because my phone is not working?

a break　b text　c listen　d read

8. Mr Hossam is a good teacher. He .... works hard.

a never　b doesn't　c don't　d always

9. .... we visit our friend today? He is so ill.

a Are　b Do　c Have　d Shall

10. Hassan never .... up late. He always sleeps early?

a stay　b staying　c stays　d is staying

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: <u>When</u> do you text your friends?　B: Always.　(.........)
2. Hossam never <u>reading</u> on the sofa.　(.........)
3. Saad <u>usually is</u> quiet.　(.........)
4. Fatma <u>always study</u> in the evenings.　(.........)

(.........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills ملحق في جزء

"A description of your bedroom"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 2



How are you feeling?

Objectives

Reading:
A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email

Writing:
An email to a friend

Listening:
People talking about learning new skills: descriptions of photos

Speaking:
Describing photos: responding to news

Language:
Adverbs of manner

Life Skills:
Empathy

"Key Vocabulary"

call-centre worker	عامل مركز اتصالات	food stall	بيع الطعام
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	lazy	
nurse	ممرضة	make (made) sure	
police officer	ضابط شرطة	park (ed)	(مَركَبة)
shop worker	عامل فى محل	look (ed) forward to	إلى
street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول	repair (ed)	
ward	عنبر (فى مستشفى)	communicate (d)	
Skills			
calligraphy	فن خط اليد	painting the kitchen	المطبخ
sign language	لغة الاشارة	sewing	

Verbs & nouns that come together

make dinner	يُعد العشاء	**spend** time with	وقت مع
clean the house	ينظف المنزل	**do** homework	بعمل الواجب المدرسى
stay in bed	يبقى فى الفراش	**sew** new curtains	ستائر جديدة

Vocabulary

patient	شخص مريض	cook	- طاهية
busy	مشغول - مزدحم	fantastic	
safe	آمن	deaf	(أطرش)
a bit	قليلاً - إلى حد ما	surprise	مفاجأة
bored	متضجر (شاعر بالملل)	art club	الفنون
tired	مُتّعبَ	neighbour	
artist	فنان	lovely	
computer system	نظام كمبيوتر	fountain	نافورة مياه
traditional	تقليدي	everyone	شخص
quite	الى حد ما / الى حد كبير	sail (ed)	

Words & Meanings

street-food seller بائع طعام متجول	this person prepares[1] food for people to eat
police officer ضابط شرطة	this person helps to keep people safe in the streets
call-centre worker عامل مركز اتصالات	this person speaks to people on the phone He or she helps them with their problems.
shop worker عامل فى محل	this person helps in a place which sells things.
computer engineer مهندس كمبيوتر	you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system
calligraphy فن خط اليد	beautiful writing using special pens or brushes[2]
sign language لغة الإشارة	a way of talking to people who cannot hear, using hands instead of[3] words
communicate يتواصل	share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways
food stall كشك لبيع الطعام	a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food
ward عنبر (فى مستشفى)	a large room in a hospital for people who need to stay in the hospital for one night or more

Arabic Meaning
١- يجهز / يعد
٢- فرشات
٣- بدلاً من

Expressions

have a rest	يستريح
drive around the city	يقود سيارة حول المدينة
come this way	يأتون من هذا الطريق
get ... ready	يُجَهز ...
learn to sail	يتعلم أن يُبحر
make falafel	يقوم بعمل الفلافل
give ... a surprise	يفاجئ ...
feel cold	يشعر بالبرد

Prepositions

at night	ليلاً
look after	يعتنى بـ
stay at home	يبقى فى المنزل
on a boat	على قارب
communicate with	يتواصل مع
wave to	يلوّح بيده لـ
play on the computer	يلعب على الكمبيوتر
sit by	يجلس بجوار
excited about	متشوق بخصوص
as a present	كهدية

Word Differences

ward	عنبر (فى مستشفى)	word	كلمة
safe	آمن (صفة)	save	ينقذ (فعل)
park	يركن (مَركَبة) / متنزه	bark	ينبح (كلب)
sew	يخيط	saw	رأى (الماضى من يرى)
cook	طاهى / طاهية	cooker	بوتجاز
sail	يبحر	sell	يبيع

Unit 2

Words & Opposites

traditional تقليدى	↔	modern حديث	lazy كسول	↔	active نشيط
busy مشغول	↔	free حر	safe آمن	↔	dangerous خطير

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	driven
learn	يتعلم	learned - learnt	learned - learnt
hurt	يؤذى - يجرح	hurt	hurt
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Language Notes

1 ➤ • look forward to

تستخدم **look forward to** بمعنى (يتطلع إلى) كما يلى:

look forward to + V-ing / Noun

ex. I'm looking forward to going home. (+ V-ing)

ex. Hassan is feeling hungry. He is looking forward to breakfast! (+ Noun)

2 ➤ • everyone / everything

تشير **everyone** ضمير غير محدد ويأتى بعدها فعلاً مفرداً، ويعوض عنها بضمير جمع (.. they, them):

ex. Everyone at the party was happy. They enjoyed so much.

تشير **everything** ضمير عدد محدد ويأتى بعدها فعلاً مفرداً، ويعوض عنها بالضمير (it):

ex. Everything is ready. I'm sure it will work well.

3 ➤ • Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ **ed-** والصفات المنتهية بـ **ing-** لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing-) إلي من/ما يسبب الصفة:

ex. The work here is really tiring. (مُتعِب - يسبب التعب)

ex. The animal was frightening. (مُرعِب - يسبب الرعب)

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed-) إلي أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة:

ex. Hassan is feeling **tired** tonight. (مُتعَب - يشعر بالتعب)

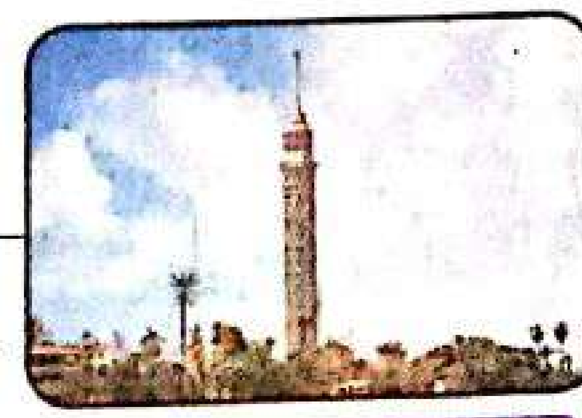
ex. The animal was **frightened**. (مرعوب - يشعر بالرعب)

- من أمثله هذه الصفات:

interested	متشوق	interesting	شيق
amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
excited	منفعل	exciting	مثير
bored	متضجر / شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل

Reading

3 am in Cairo SB Page (13)



A I'm looking after patients[1] at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward*[2]. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired[3] tonight. I'm looking forward to[4] going home and having a rest[5].

Amal

B We're driving around the city and making sure[6] that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit[7] bored[8] and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to breakfast!

Imad and Adel

C I'm parking[9] my food stall*[10] here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

Kamal

Arabic Meaning

١- مرضى
٢- عنبر
٣- مُتعب
٤- يتطلع إلى
٥- راحة
٦- يتأكد
٧- إلى حد ما
٨- متضجر
٩- يركن (سيارة)
١٠- كشك لبيع الطعام

Say it correctly

* ward / * stall

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمات مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة saw

Reading

SB Page (14)





Ziad

Hi. I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat[1] in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy[2].

On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner[3] with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast[4] with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook[5]! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

Arabic Meaning

- شقة
- كسول
- عشاء
- إفطار متأخر
- طاهية
- قارب
- يصلح
- يبحر

Injy and Aya

Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya . We live near the sea.

My father and my uncle have an old boat[6] which they are repairing[7]. I am learning to sail[8] but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.

Tapescript SB Page (15)

Tamer : I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin Sami. Sami is deaf[4]- he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!

Eman : I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing[6] some new curtains.

Manal : I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy[7] and art club[8] at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist[9] and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present.

Arabic Meaning

1- مهارة
2- لغة الاشارة
3- يتواصل
4- أصم (أطرش)
5- مفاجأة
6- الخياطة
7- فن خط اليد
8- نادى الفنون
9- فنان

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... looks after patients at a hospital.
   a police officer b shop worker c nurse d computer engineer
2. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking .... drinking some hot coffee. SB
   a forward to b after c up d for
3. .... sure all doors and windows are closed before you go out.
   a Do b Make c Have d Build
4. I'm .... my food stall here because it is the best place in the city. SB
   a parking b barking c flying d doing
5. You call a .... if there is a problem with your computer system. SB
   a police officer b shop worker c nurse d computer engineer
6. Hamada never likes to work. He is really ....
   a careful b helpful c lazy d active
7. A .... helps in a place which sells things.
   a shop worker b computer engineer c nurse d police officer

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... prepares food for people to eat. SB
   a street-food seller b teacher c police officer d computer engineer
2. We need a computer engineer to .... our computer because it doesn't work. WB
   a damage b hurt c repair d break
3. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use .... language. WB
   a sign b mark c degree d sound

4. A .... helps to keep people safe in the streets.

a street-food seller b nurse c police officer d computer engineer

5. **A:** Where is the new nurse?
B: She is in the .... looking after patients.

a zoo b bank c ward d word

6. How often do you .... dinner?

a do b make c harm d repair

7. You should join a .... club if you want to write beautifully.

a sports b calligraphy c computer d medicine

8. When I arrived at the clinic, there were four .... there.

a engineers b sellers c patients d managers

9. I'm feeling really tired today. Why don't you .... a rest?

a make b have c fill d drive

10. The guide communicates .... tourists in English.

a to b in c with d about

Grammar

1 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

I → am
He / She / It / (اسم مفرد) → is
We / They / You / (اسم جمع) → are
+ V-ing.

ex. I am working today.
ex. They are watching TV now.

كيف يُضاف للفعل (ing):

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع والواحد):

sit → sitting tap → tapping

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ(e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرفى (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying

Usage الاستخدام

١- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام):
ex. I am sitting in my English class.

٢- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):
ex. My sister is learning to dance.

٣- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة:
ex. They are painting the school this week.

٤- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها فى المستقبل:
ex. Tomorrow, my dad is taking the train to Tanta.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر!	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	still	مازال
Listen!	استمع!	at present	فى الوقت الحاضر	Watch out!	احترس!
now	الآن	Look out!	احترس!		

Negative / النفى

لنفى فعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلى:

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + V-ing.

ex. You are not working hard, Ali.

Question / السؤال

نسأل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغ الآتية:

١- للسؤال بـــ «هل» **Yes / No question**

Am → I		
Is → he - she - it / فاعل مفرد غائب		+ (V-ing.)...?
Are → we - you - they / فاعل جمع		

ex. Is your mother working?

- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

٢- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام **Wh-question** نضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل الصيغة السابقة:

ex. What is your father doing?

لاحظ الآتى:

• بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم فى زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن تستخدم فى زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

love يحب – **like** يحب – **have** يملك - **want** يريد - **need** يحتاج

ex. I want to see Ali now.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children .... now.
   a. sleep b. were sleeping c. is sleeping d. are sleeping
2. Mrs Hossam .... a course at the moment.
   a. take b. is taking c. are taking d. takes
3. They boys .... Keep quiet.
   a. are studying b. don't study c. studies d. studied

2 The present simple and the present continuous

زمني المضارع البسيط و المستمر

	Present simple	Present continuous
Form	I / We / They / You + inf. He / She / It + verb + s	I → am + V-ing. He / She / It → is + V-ing. We / They / You → are + V-ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق وعادات وأفعال روتينية	- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام). - للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. - للتعبير عن احداث لم تنتهى بعد.
Keywords	every - always - usually - often - sometimes - occasionally - never	Look! - Listen! at the moment - now - today at present - these day - Look out! - Watch out!
Negative	don't / doesn't + inf.	am / is / are } not + V-ing.
Question	Do / Does + فاعل + inf.?	Am / Is / Are + فاعل + V-ing?

لاحظ الآتى:

- النمط التالي شائع الاستخدام ويجمع بين زمني المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر:

ex. Hossam usually works at home, but today he is working in his office.

- في الجزء الاول من الجملة نتحدث عن عادة دائمة فاستخدمنا زمن المضارع البسيط أما في الجزء الثاني فنتحدث عن حدث مؤقت فاستخدمنا زمن المضارع المستمر.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hanan usually studies at home, but today she .... at her aunt's office.
   a is studying   b studies   c studying   d study
2. Hala is a clever girl. She always .... her mother with the housework.
   a helping   b is helping   c help   d helps
3. Look! That man .... to open the door of your car.
   a tries   b trying   c is trying   d tried

Exercises on Lessons (1) & (2)

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why is Amal .... tired?
   a feel b feels c felt d feeling
2. Why ...... Hoda waving to those girls?
   a is b are c am d can
3. **A:** How often does Sara .... the house?
   B: Every day.
   a clean b cleaning c is cleaning d cleans
4. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he .... his grandparents.
   a sees b are seeing c see d is seeing
5. Mum and Dad .... tea now.
   a drink b are drinking c drinking d drinks
6. Fady .... wearing a jacket today because it is very hot.
   a is b isn't c are d aren't
7. Camels always .... much water.
   a drinks b drink c are drinking d is drinking

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Hossan **not like** spaghetti. (..........
2. We can't go outside because it **rains** now. (..........
3. Gamila **going** to work on foot every day. (..........
4. **A:** You **work** hard today. **B:** Yes, I have a lot to do. (..........

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police officer .... a school today, but usually he drives around streets.
   a visits b is visiting c are visiting d visit
2. Farida always .... a white blouse.
   a wear b is wearing c wearing d wears

3. Nader doesn't usually work in the shop, but his brother is ill so he .... there today. WB

a helps b help c is helping d are helping

4. That computer .... much money. I can't buy it.

a costing b costs c is costing d are costing

5. Hassan is busy. He .... the kitchen now.

a paints b paint c is painting d are painting

6. The street-food seller usually makes falafels, but he .... cheese sandwiches this morning. WB

a sell b sells c is selling d are selling

7. The train is never late. It always .... on time.

a leave b is leaving c leaves d left

8. Farmers usually .... animals in the field.

a use b are using c uses d is using

9. Listen! The children .... outside.

a play b plays c are playing d played

10. She usually .... the newspaper in the morning.

a read b is reading c reads d are reading

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He **writes** a letter to his penfriend at the moment. (............)
2. Doaa **want** to study abroad. (............)
3. Listen to Ali. What language **do** he speaking? (............)
4. The water **boils**. Can you turn the gas off? (............)

"Key Vocabulary"

airport	مطار	guest	
wedding	حفل زفاف	striped	
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	guess (ed)	

Important Expressions

in the foreground	فى المقدمة	towards the right / left	...ية اليمين / اليسار
in the background	فى الخلفية	on the right / left	...اليمين / اليسار
in the middle of	فى وسط		

Vocabulary

eldest	الأكبر سنًا	husband	
port	ميناء (شحن وتفريغ)	suit	
middle sister	الاخت الوسطى (سنًا)	weeding	...النباتات الضارة
hill	تل	playground	...- فناء
crowd	حشد من الناس	sweet	.../ حلو
rocks	صخور	skin	...- بشرة
shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	treat (ed)	
Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	invite (d)	
the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque	مسجد أم السلطان شعبان	wait (ed)	
		sew (ed)	

Expressions

take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سيلفى
as usual	كالمعتاد
get ready	يستعد
get married	يتزوج
catch a plane	يستقل طائرة
have a rest	يأخذ راحة

Prepositions

smile at the camera	...م تجاه الكاميرا
sit on rocks	...على صخور
get on a plane	... طائرة
sit under a tree	...أسفل شجرة
for the first time	...مرة
down a hill	...تل
at the end of ...	...نهاية ...

Words & Meanings

wedding	حفل زفاف	a ceremony[1] in which people get married	**Arabic Meaning**
striped	مخطط	with long narrow lines[2] of colour that are a different colour from the areas[3] next to them	١- مراسم ٢- خطوط ٣- مناطق ٤- يبدو ٥- أبعد
background	خلفية	the part that seems[4] furthest[5] to you in a picture or photograph	
foreground	مقدمة	the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph	

Words & Opposites

sharp	حاد	blunt	غير حاد	carefully	بحرص	carelessly	بإهمال
quietly	بهدوء	loudly	بصوت عالى	well	بشكل جيد	badly	بشكل سىء
fast	بسرعة	slowly	ببطىء	sadly	بحزن	happily	بسعادة
light	فاتح	dark	غامق				

Word Differences

skin	جلد (الانسان والحيوان)	leather	جلد مدبوغ
middle	وسط	medal	ميدالية

Conjugations of *Irregular Verbs*

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
hang	يعلّق	hung	hung
fly	يطير	flew	flown
win	يفوز	won	won

Language Notes

1 • elder • eldest

• كلا الكلمتان تستخدمان خصوصًا بين أفراد العائلة الواحدة.

- تستخدم **(elder)** بمعنى (أكبر سنًا) للمقارنة بين أعمار شخصين ، لاحظ أن **elder** لا يتبعها **than** بعكس **older**.

- تستخدم **(eldest)** للتفضيل بين أعمار أكثر من شخص بمعنى (الأكبر سنًا) .

ex. Ali is my **elder** brother.

ex. My **eldest sister** is sitting next to the tree.

2 • It + be + adj. + to + inf.

يستخدم هذا الأسلوب لوصف حدث معين:

ex. It's important **to drive** carefully.

يمكن استخدام (الشخص + **for**) بعد الصفة لتحديد الشخص:

ex. It's important **for Ali** to drive carefully.

في النفي يمكن أن نضيف **(not)** قبل **(to)** :

ex. It's important **not to** drive carelessly.

3 • in + a piece of clothes

يستخدم هذا الأسلوب بمعنى (مرتدى):

ex. The man **in the striped shirt** is my uncle.

Tapescript SB Page (16)

Girl 1: This is a photo of my sister's wedding(1). It's at the end of the day and the guests(2) are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though(3), and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssif, her husband(4).

Boy 1: That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp! We got up at 5.00 am in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily(5) eating my lunch.

Boy 2: This is me at the airport(6). I'm waiting excitedly(7) to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.

Girl 2: This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet(8)? She is laughing loudly(9) in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat- she thinks it's very funny(10).

Arabic Meaning

١- حفل زفاف
٢- ضيوف
٣- بالرغم من ذلك
٤- زوج
٥- بنهم / بشراهه
٦- مطار
٧- بحماس
٨- جميل
٩- بصوت عال
١٠- مضحك

Reading

SB Page (17)



This is a photo of me and my family in Al Azhar Park[1] in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground[2] of the photo. In the background[3] you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is on the right[4] of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her - we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is in the middle of[5] the picture. She is taking a selfie as usual[6]! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and towards the left[7]. I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة الازهر
٢- في مقدمة
٣- في الخلفيه
٤- علي اليمين
٥- في وسط
٦- كالمعتاد
٧- تجاه اليسار

Exercises on Lesson (3)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can catch a plane from a/an .... WB
   a) port b) part c) zoo d) airport

2. **A:** Do you know the date of Osman and Dina's ....?
   B: Yes, they got married in 2018.
   a) weeding b) death c) wedding d) party

3. **A:** What can you see in the picture?
   B: .... the left, there is a big man.
   a) On b) In c) Of d) From

4. When you invite a person to your house, they are your .... WB
   a) guest b) guess c) customer d) partner

5. Sara is sitting in the .... of the picture.
   a) moon b) medal c) metal d) middle

6. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a .... WB
   a) suit b) pan c) pencil case d) suitcase

7. The car moved .... the right not to hit the boy.

a towards b about c at d of

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When two people get married, they have a..........

a weeding b prize c medal d wedding

2. We went for a walk in Al Azhar .... yesterday.

a Park b Bark c Theatre d Cinema

3. There were a lot of .... at the party yesterday.

a teams b guests c suitcases d classes

4. Mr Ahmed .... me like one of his family. He is a kind man.

a treats b hates c kills d disliked

5. The skin of a zebra is ....

a striped b lines c silver d golden

6. A .... isn't as high as a mountain.

a river b hill c sea d lake

7. I bought a modern mobile phone because I like .... selfies.

a doing b sitting c discussing d taking

8. I visited England .... the first time in 2018.

a for b at c out d from

9. If you are tired, why don't you .... a rest?

a make b have c be d do

10. In a school, students play games in a ....

a playground b theatre c museum d library

11. There were three trees in the .... of the picture.

a roof b background c underground d farm

Grammar

Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

• الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم:

ex. The girl is beautiful.

• ظرف الطريقة (الحال) عبارة عن كلمة تصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـــ (How):

ex. A: How does Aya sing? B: She sings beautifully.

ex. B: How does Ali speak? B: He speaks slowly.

• يأتى ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

ex. He drives carefully. (بعد الفعل)

ex. Hossam threw the ball quickly. (بعد المفعول)

Form التكوين

• **يتكون ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:**

١- القاعدة العامة هى إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة:

excited متشوق → excitedly بشوق

quick سريع → quickly بسرعة

٢- إذا كانت الصفة منتهية بـ (l) يضاف (ly):

beautiful جميل → beautifully بجمال

careful حريص → carefully بحرص

٣- الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) تحذف منها حرف (e) ويضاف (y):

possible ممكن → possibly بشكل ممكن

probable محتمل → probably بشكل محتمل

٤- الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن تحول إلى (ily):

hungry جوعان → hungrily بنهم

happy سعيد → happily بسعادة

هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

fast سريع → fast بسرعة

late متأخر → late متأخرًا

good جيد → well بشكل جيد

hard جاد - شديد → hard بجد - بشدة

early مبكر → early مبكرًا

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boys ran .... in the race.
   a fast b careful c happy d easy
2. Mai answered the questions ....
   a correct b correctly c careful d careless
3. I can swim ....
   a good b bad c well d clever

لاحظ الفارق فى المعنى:

- الفرق فى المعنى:

hard	بجد - بشدة	hardly	بالكاد / نادرًا
late	متأخر	lately	حديثًا / مؤخرًا

ex. Ali studies hard.

ex. Mona can hardly walk.

Exercises on Lesson 3

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's at the end of the day and the guests are -------- leaving.
   a slow b slowly c happy d careful
2. The mother looked -------- at her naughty child.
   a hungrily b angry c angrily d careful
3. Tamer is a careful driver. He drives -------- .
   a hungrily b carefully c angrily d careful
4. That's my sister. She is smiling -------- at the camera.
   a careless b careful c happy d happily
5. The children are singing ------- in the playground.
   a happy b loud c loudly d careful
6. Mr Muhamed speaks English -------- .
   a good b well c bad d beautiful
7. He was sad because he answered the questions -------- .
   a bad b well c good d badly

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I don't remember Mr Hossam very **good**. (--------)
2. This exercise is **easily**. (--------)
3. You should study **hardly**. (--------)
4. He answered the test **easy**. (--------)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm sitting under a tree and ---------- eating my lunch.
   a hungry b hungrily c beautiful d beautifully

2. The teacher treats all her children .... SB

a kind b kindly c bad d good

3. **A:** .... does Ola play the piano? **B:** She plays the piano beautifully.

a How b What c When d Who

4. I'm waiting .... to get on a plane for the first time. SB

a excited b excitedly c careful d hungrily

5. The man was afraid and left the room ....

a quiet b quietly c careful d careless

6. Smoking is .... for your health.

a bad b badly c good d well

7. The three men got out of bed ....

a loudly b lazily c careful d careless

8. Yasmin has a loud voice. She always talks ....

a loud b loudly c quiet d quietly

9. She is strong. She is lifting the weight ....

a easy b easily c careful d excited

10. The children are playing .... in the school playground.

a easy b easily c happy d happily

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The boy was sad because he sang **bad**. (..........)
2. These people are speaking **quiet**. (..........)
3. When I asked Ali about his dad, he answered **calm**. (..........)
4. You should drive **slow** along this road. (..........)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(مجاب عنه فى جزء **Writing skills**)

"People and jobs"

"Key Vocabulary"

grateful	ممتن - شاكر	alone	
normal	طبيعى / معتاد	desert	
teenager	شخص مراهق		

Useful phrases

Go outside	إذهب للخارج	Be grateful	(شاكرًا) ممتنًا
Help someone	ساعد شخص	Be friendly	ودودًا
Get lots of rest	خذ كثيرًا من الراحة		

Vocabulary

enough	بشكل كافى - كافى	Amman	عمان (فى الأردن)
nature	الطبيعة	amazing	
else	آخر	coach	
way	طريقة - طريق	cloudy	بالغيوم
news	أخبار	continue (d)	
pleased	مسرور	relax (ed)	
empathy	تعاطف	try (ied)	يحاول
term	فصل دراسى	remember (ed)	
until	حتى	miss (ed)	
happiness	سعادة	pass (ed)	يجتاز
maybe	ربما	suggest (ed)	

Expressions

get worried	يتوتر / يقلق
get better	يتحسن
make friends	يكوّن صداقات
What **about**..?	ماذا عن...؟
go **swimming**	يذهب للسباحة
go **sailing**	يذهب للإبحار
Guess what?	خمن ما هى؟
have a drink	يتناول مشروب
have an interview	لديه مقابلة شخصية
do an interview	يجرى مقابلة شخصية

Prepositions

pleased **about**	بخصوص
go **on** a trip	فى رحلة
happy **about**	بخصوص
worried **about**	بخصوص
for a week	أسبوع
send ... **to** ...	إلى ...
grateful **for**	لـ
Congratulations **on** ...	على
speak **on** the phone	فى الهاتف
on a bicycle	دراجة

Word Differences

alone	بمفرده	lonely	شاعر بالوحدة
remember	يتذكر	remind	يذكّر
desert	صحراء	dessert	طبق الحلو (التحلية)
way	طريقة / طريق	road	طريق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
tell	يخبر	told	told

Words & Opposites

normal	طبيعى	abnormal	غير طبيعى	kind	عطوف	unkind	غير عطوف
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	clear	صافى	happiness	سعادة	sadness	حزن

Words & Meanings

desert	صحراء	an area[1] of very dry land.
teenager	شخص مراهق	a boy or girl aged[2] 13-19.
normal	طبيعي - معتاد	usual[3], not different
alone	بمفرده	not with other people.
grateful	ممتن - شاكر	feeling happy about the good things in your life

Arabic Meaning
١- منطقة
٢- بالغ من العمر
٣- معتاد



Language Notes

1 • make

- **make +** مفعول (إسم أو ضمير) **+ inf.** — يجعل

  ex. Running makes me feel better.
- **make +** مفعول (إسم أو ضمير) **+ adj.** — يجعل

  ex. The news made Hossam happy.

2 • much + comparative

- تستخدم بعض الكلمات مثل **(much)** تليها صفة مقارنة لتحديد مقدار الفارق بين طرفى المقارنة:

ex. Ali is **much taller** than Omar.

ex. Hala is **much more beautiful** than Sara.

3 • else

تستخدم كلمة (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some / every / any / no) مثل:

someone / everyone / anything / nothing

ex. **A:** Two cups of tea, please. **B:** Anything **else**?

تستخدم كلمة (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد بعض كلمات الاستفهام مثل (What / Who):

ex. **Who** else was at the party?

4 • such

تستخدم (such) بمعنى (جدًا) فى الأسلوب التالى:

such + a /an + صفة + اسم

ex. Mrs Al-Gamal is **such a good teacher**.

Reading

SB Page (18)

Happiness for teenagers

It's normal(1) to get worried or to feel sad sometimes - but what helps teenagers(2) to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

Get lots of rest(3)

Teenagers often don't sleep enough(4), but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

Be friendly(5)

It's good to be alone(6) sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

Go outside

People need nature(7) to be happy. Go to the desert(8) or the river(9) or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

Help someone

When you do something kind for someone else(10), this makes you feel happy, too. Try(11) it! You feel really good.

Be grateful(12)

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased(13) about them.

Arabic Mean...

- معتاد
- مراهقون
- راحة
- بشكل كافى
- وحيد
- طبيعة
- صحراء
- نهر
- آخر
- يجرب
- ممتن
- مسرور

Tapescript SB Page (19)

Arabic Meaning
١- تدريب
٢- يأمل
٣- ربما
٤- فريق
٥- مدرب
٦- شاق
٧- تهانئي

1

Ali : Hi Yasser! Are you coming to football practice[1] on Thursday?

Yasser : Oh Hello Ali. No I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope[2] he gets better soon. It's a pity that you can't come. Maybe[3] I'll see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser : Thanks, Ali.

2

Yasser : Hey Ali, Guess what! I'm in the football team![4] The coach[5] told me after football practice last night.

Ali : Well done, Yasser! That's great news.

3

Hana : Hello Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?

Salma : Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard![6] I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night

Hana : That must be difficult. But don't worry: things will get better with time. You were always the best student in our class!

4

Hana : Hi Huda, How are things?

Huda : Hello Hana! Fine thanks. I passed my English exam!

Hana : Congratulations![7] I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

Reading

SB Page (20)

New Message

Hi Salma

How are you? I hope[1] you are enjoying your new school. We really miss [2] you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news[3] from school. Mrs Al-Gamal is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what? My parents say I can go on the school trip[4] to Amman[5]. I am very exciled[6]! There are many amazing[7] places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news? Write soon!

Injy

Send

Arabic Mean...

١- يأمل
٢- يفتقد
٣- أخبار
٤- رحلة
٥- مدينة عمان
٦- متشوق
٧- مذهل

Reading

SB Page (21)

New Message

Hi

How are you? Guess what! I've passed[1] my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard[2] to pass it next time.

What's your news?

Write soon!

Huda

Send

Arabic Meaning

١- يجتاز
٢- بجد

Reading

WB Page (84)

New Message

Hi Tarek

How's it going? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?

The news from me is that. we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have got some bad news, too. I'm sharing the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.

Write soon!

Tamer

Send

Reading

WB Page (82)

New Message

Dear Help! Magazine

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! Please can you help me?

I do well at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. What am I doing wrong?

Yours, Osama!

Send

New Message

Dear Osama

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to thi that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember: y are wrong! Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.
When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends They probably think you are having a better time than they are! Remember th we all work and relax at different times. Be grateful for the good things in yo life and continue to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine.

Send

Exercises on Lessons ④, ⑤ & ⑥

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is an area of very dry land.
   a) river b) sea c) desert d) dessert
2. We never leave my little sister .... in the house.
   a) fast b) badly c) well d) alone
3. A young .... of about fifteen hit the glass door with a ball.
   a) baby b) guide c) teacher d) teenager
4. I'm very .... to everyone that helped me with my problems.
   a) angry b) grateful c) ugly d) nervous
5. It's .... to feel nervous before an exam.
   a) normal b) careless c) noisy d) amazing
6. If you feel tired, try to .... some rest.
   a) get b) leave c) be d) keep
7. You are always staying at home! Why don't you go .... ?
   a) outside b) inside c) upstairs d) downstairs

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dina was really .... when she got high mark in the final exams.

a sad b angry c pleased d cheap

2. **A:** Do you .... the title of the book?

B: Yes, it was "Great Men and Women"

a remind b remember c miss d pass

3. A .... is a boy or girl aged 13-19. WB

a teenager b child c baby d manager

4. There weren't .... chairs for all of us, so I waited outside.

a too b enough c so d much

5. **A:** I'm feeling bored.

B: .... about going to the zoo?

a Where b What c When d Who

6. .... usually have very little water and very few plants growing in it.

a Clouds b Volcanoes c Deserts d Valleys

7. I always .... worried when I have exams.

a make b help c relax d get

8. One of the best .... to be happy is to remember the good things in your life. SB

a roads b ways c streets d paths

9. When he joined a new school, he .... friends with lots of students.

a built b made c did d came

10. My class went .... a trip to the Egyptian Museum last week.

a in b on c at d of

Language Functions

Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار

1 Responding to good news الاستجابة عند سماع أخبار سارة

عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

Well done, ... That's great news!	احسنت يا.... هذه أخبار رائعة.
Congratulations! I'm so happy for you.	تهانئي! أنا سعيد للغاية من أجلك.

2 Responding to bad news الاستجابة عند سماع أخبار غير سارة

عند سماع خبر أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

I'm sorry to hear that.	أنا حزين لسماع هذا.
It's a pity that....	من المحزن أن........
That must be difficult. But don't worry.	من المؤكد ان هذا صعب لكن لا تقلق.
I'm sure things will get better with time.	أنا متأكد أن الامور ستتحسن مع الوقت.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

Heba : I'm ❶ .... to hear th

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new ❷........ , but she couldn't g

Heba : It's a ❸ .... that she couldn't g

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed!

Heba : That must be ❹ ....

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

Heba : ❺ .... news! I'm so happy for he

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

Heba : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

Excel Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A: ------- well can you speak English?

B: Very well.

a What b How c When d Why

------- to go out now. I am really busy.

a am not liking b amn't liked c doesn't like d don't like

Hassan ------- . That's why he can't answer the phone.

a sleeps b is sleeping c slept d was sleeping

Read and correct the underlined words:

Why **are** everyone staying at home? (------------)

You must go up the stairs. They **repair** the lift. (------------)

Writing Tips

Useful phrases to use in an email

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتبدأ رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

Dear ......,	عزيزى ....
Hi ......,	أهلاً ....
Hello ......,	أهلاً ....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتسأل عن صحة شخص:

How are you?	كيف حالك؟
How are things? / How's life? / How's it going?	كيف تسير الأمور؟

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتقديم أخبار:

The news from me / us is that	أخبارى / أخبارنا هى أن ....
Guess what?	خمن ماذا؟

يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المشاعر:

I / We miss you.	إنى أفتقدك / نحن نفتقدك.
I / We hope that you are	أتمنى / نتمنى أن تكون ....
I'm so excited / sad because	إنى متشوق / حزين لأن .....

يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المستقبل:

I'm looking forward to	أتطلع إلى ....
I can't wait to	لا أستطيع الإنتظار أن ....

يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتنهى حديثك:

Write soon.	أكتب لى سريعاً.
See you soon.	أراك قريباً.

Punctuation تذكر بعض قواعد الترقيم

١- تنتهى الجملة بنقطة (Full stop).

- This is a pen.

٢- ينتهى السؤال بعلامة إستفهام (Question mark).

- What's your name?

٣- تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير (Capital letter).

- A man is asking to meet you.

٤- نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (Comma) بين أجزاء الجملة.

- I'm fine, but there is some bad news.

كما نستخدمها فى القوائم :

- We have apples, oranges and pears.

٥- يمكنك إستخدام التعبيرات الآتية لوصف صورة:

- This is a photo of ...
هذه صورة لـــ ......
- It shows ....
الصورة تبين ....
- In the foreground, we can see ....
في المقدمة، نستطيع ان نري.......
- On the left of the man in the striped shirt, there is .....
علي يسار الرجل المرتدي قميصا مخططًا، يوجد ......

Writing Skills

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 People and jobs

People have different jobs. Everyone should do the job they like. Some people are police officers. They are important. A police officer drives around the city and makes sure that people are safe in streets. He/She catches thieves and helps make traffic better. Some people are nurses. They are very important, too. A nurse helps look after patients in hospitals.

Some people are street-food sellers. A street-food seller always works in streets. That's why their job is hard. He/She prepares food for people to eat. Some people are call-centre workers. A call-centre worker speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.

2 What you do at the weekend

Hi, I'm Omar. I'm a prep-school student. I'm twelve years old. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy. I usually spend a nice time with my family. My parents and I go and visit my grandparents at their house.

We usually have a big dinner with them and we sometimes stay at their house until it is late. Their house is bigger than our flat. On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

3 A trip to Al Azhar Park

My name is Salma. I live with my family in Cairo. My family and I always go on trips around Egypt. Once we went on a trip to Al Azhar Park. We left home early in the morning. It was sunny and we all felt active. We arrived at Al Azhar Park at 9 am.

My mother and father sat under a tree. We had a delicious breakfast there. We visited the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. It was really amazing. We took wonderful photos there. My middle sister took selfies as usual. We got home at 6. It was a fantastic day and all of us felt happy.

Unit 2 Review

"Key Vocabulary Review"

call-centre worker	عامل مركز اتصالات	ward	ـر (فى مستشفى)
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	make sure	ـد
nurse	ممرضة	park	ـن (مركبة)
police officer	ضابط شرطة	food stall	ـة لبيع الطعام
airport	مطار	lazy	ـول
wedding	حفل زفاف	guest	ـيف
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	striped	ـطط
grateful	ممتن - شاكر	alone	ـفرده
normal	طبيعى / معتاد	desert	ـحراء
teenager	شخص مراهق	look (ed) forward to	ـطلع إلى
shop worker	عامل فى محل	repair (ed)	ـلح
street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول	communicate (d)	ـواصل
Skills			
calligraphy	فن خط اليد	painting the kitchen	ـلان المطبخ
sign language	لغة الاشارة	sewing	ـخياطة
Important Expressions			
in the background	فى الخلفية	in the middle of	ـى وسط
in the foreground	فى المقدمة	on the right / left	ـى اليمين / اليسار
towards the right / left	ناحية اليمين / اليسار		
Useful phrases			
Go outside	إذهب للخارج	Be grateful	ـن ممتنًا (شاكرًا)
Help someone	ساعد شخص	Be friendly	ـن ودودًا

Grammar Review

1 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

-يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر من:

am, is, are + V-ing.

ex. Dina is watching TV now.
ex. He is playing football.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن:
١- فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام)

ex. Listen! The boys are singing.

٢- أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط ان تحدث وقت الكلام):

ex. My brother is learning to speak English.

٣- أحداث مؤقتة:

ex. Hassan is taking a course at university.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر!	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	still	مازال
Listen!	استمع!	at present	فى الوقت الحاضر	Watch out!	احترس!
now	الآن	Look out!	احترس!		

- لنفى فعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلى:

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + V-ing.

ex. He isn't watching TV at the moment.

- نسأل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغ الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) + am, is, are + فاعل + V-ing ...?

ex. Is Ahmed studying English?
ex. What is Mariam doing?

2 Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

- يصف ظرف الطريقة كيفية حدوث الفعل:

ex. Mohamed always speaks quietly.

- يتكون ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

quick	سريع	→ quickly	بسرعة	excited	متشوق	→ excitedly	بشوق
careful	حريص	→ carefully	بحرص	beautiful	جميل	→ beautifully	بجمال
probable	محتمل	→ probably	بشكل محتمل	possible	ممكن	→ possibly	بشكل ممكن
happy	سعيد	→ happily	بسعادة	hungry	جوعان	→ hungrily	بنهم

ن ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

good جيد	→	well بشكل جيد	fast سريع	→	fast بسرعة
hard جاد-شديد	→	hard بجد - بشدة	late متأخر	→	late متأخرًا
early مبكر	→	early مبكرًا			

Language Functions Review

استجابة عند سماع أخبار سارة

1 Responding to good news

عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

Well done, ... That's great news!
Congratulations! I'm so happy for you.

استجابة عند سماع أخبار غير سارة

2 Responding to bad news

عند سماع خبر أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

I'm sorry to hear that.
It's a pity that....
That must be difficult. But don't worry.
I'm sure things will get better with time.

General Exercises on Unit 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy : What do you do?
Kamal : I'm a street-food seller.
Samy : Why are you parking your food ❶ .... at this place
Kamal : Because it's the best place in the city.
Samy : Why ❷ .... you think that
Kamal : Lots of people and tourists come this way.
Samy : ❸ .... do people start to buy their breakfast
Kamal : They start to buy their breakfast ❹ .... 6 a.m
Samy : What are you looking forward to?
Kamal : I'm looking forward to ❺ .... home

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We're sitting .... on the rocks because they are very sharp!
   a happy b happily c carefully d careful
2. Ola .... sports today because she hurt her leg.
   a doesn't do b is not doing c are not doing d don't do

3. What is Imad .... ? It looks very nice! SB
   a eat b eating c eats d ate
4. I can't come to the park because I .... the house today. WB
   a clean b cleaning c am cleaning d cleans
5. Your father can .... the car on this road, it is very quiet. WB
   a park b put c remind d remember
6. We .... a film and it is very funny. SB
   a watch b are watching c watches d watching
7. It is usually easy to .... with people in other countries if you speak English. WB
   a listen b communicate c shout d cry
8. My sister speaks very .... SB
   a beautiful b careful c quiet d quietly
9. Look! The horse .... over the fence.
   a jump b jumps c was jumping d is jumping
10. A/An .... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems. SB
    a doctor b call-centre worker
    c computer engineer d nurse
11. My little brother is very .... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! WB
    a active b angry c interesting d lazy
12. Fatma is .... so she cannot hear you. WB
    a dear b blind c deaf d strong
13. Please .... sure that you write your emails carefully.v SB
    a make b take c do d build
14. The nurse works on the .... for children. WB
    a stadium b ward c word d playground
15. This is a photo of my parents' .... WB
    a married b marry c wedding d weeding

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I always **drinking** milk for breakfast. SB (..........)
2. Maya and Rami **text** their cousins in Canada now. WB (..........)
3. What game is Osama **play** on the computer? SB (..........)
4. Mr Ahmed speaks English **good**. SB (..........)
5. My friend sews **bad**. SB (..........)
6. The cat is sitting in the sun **lazy**. SB (..........)

4 ▶ **Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:** (Writing skills ...

"What you do at the weekend"

TEST 2 UNIT 2

A Listening

... الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 ▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker looks after ------- at a hospital.
   a pupils   b friends   c patients   d boys
2. The speaker looks after children in a children's -------
   a house   b flat   c school   d ward
3. The speaker is feeling ------- tonight.
   a happy   b sad   c tired   d glad
4. The speaker is looking forward to going home and having a -------
   a drink   b food   c fruit   d rest

B Language Functions

2 ▶ **Complete the following dialogue:**

Hadeer: How are you?

Khaled: I am fine. And you?

Hadeer: Fine. Thanks. I have some good news. ❶ ---------------- W

Khaled: Really! What?

Hadeer: I got the full mark in the science exam.

Khaled: I'm ❷ ---------------- to hear

Hadeer: What about you?

Khaled: I got the ❸ ---------------- mark

Hadeer: Well ❹ ----------------! That's great n

Khaled: ❺ ----------------

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

This is Nelly. She's a nurse. She's tall and thin. She works at a hospital. She looks after sick people. She gets up at six o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and puts on her clothes. Then she eats breakfast at half past six. At seven o'clock, she catches the bus to the hospital. Nelly starts work at eight o'clock. She helps the doctors. At twelve o'clock, she has lunch. She goes home at five o'clock. She has dinner at half past six in the evening. Then, she watches TV. At ten o'clock, she goes to bed.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Nelly do before going to work?

----

2. Do you think people like Nelly? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Nelly goes home from work at -------------- o'clock.

a 6 b 5 c 6:30 d 10

4. Nelly watches TV in the -------------- .

a morning b afternoon c evening d midday

5. Nelly works as a/an --------------

a engineer b nurse c doctor d architect

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nabila feels ill, so she -------------- in bed this morning. WB

a stays b is staying c stay d stayed

2. On Saturday, I usually -------------- time with my cousins. WB

a spend b spends c spending d am spending

3. Our football team will win because they are playing very --------------. WB

a good b well c bad d badly

4. I'm very -------------- for all your help, sir.

a grateful b helpful c tidy d delicious

5. The boy cried when he felt that he was .... at home.

a happy   b careful   c alone   d cheerful

6. Hassan wants his handwriting to be fine. That's why he is learning ....

a music   b calligraphy   c sign language   d sewing

7. Mrs Ola is learning .... these days because she wants to be a dressmaker.

a drawing   b sewing   c painting   d hunting

8. I love my friends so much. I really like to .... time with them.

a take   b leave   c spend   d clean

9. A: .... does your dad drive?
B: He drives carefully.

a Why   b How   c When   d What

10. Sara is a beautiful singer. She sings ....

a beautiful   b beautifully   c beauty   d more beautiful

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Watch out! The bus **coming** too fast. (..........)
2. What time do you **doing** your homework after school? WB (..........)
3. It is important to drive **careful** when it is raining. WB (..........)
4. Look! The sun **shines** and the sky is clear. (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills مدعم في جزء

"A trip to Al Azhar Park"

....

....

....

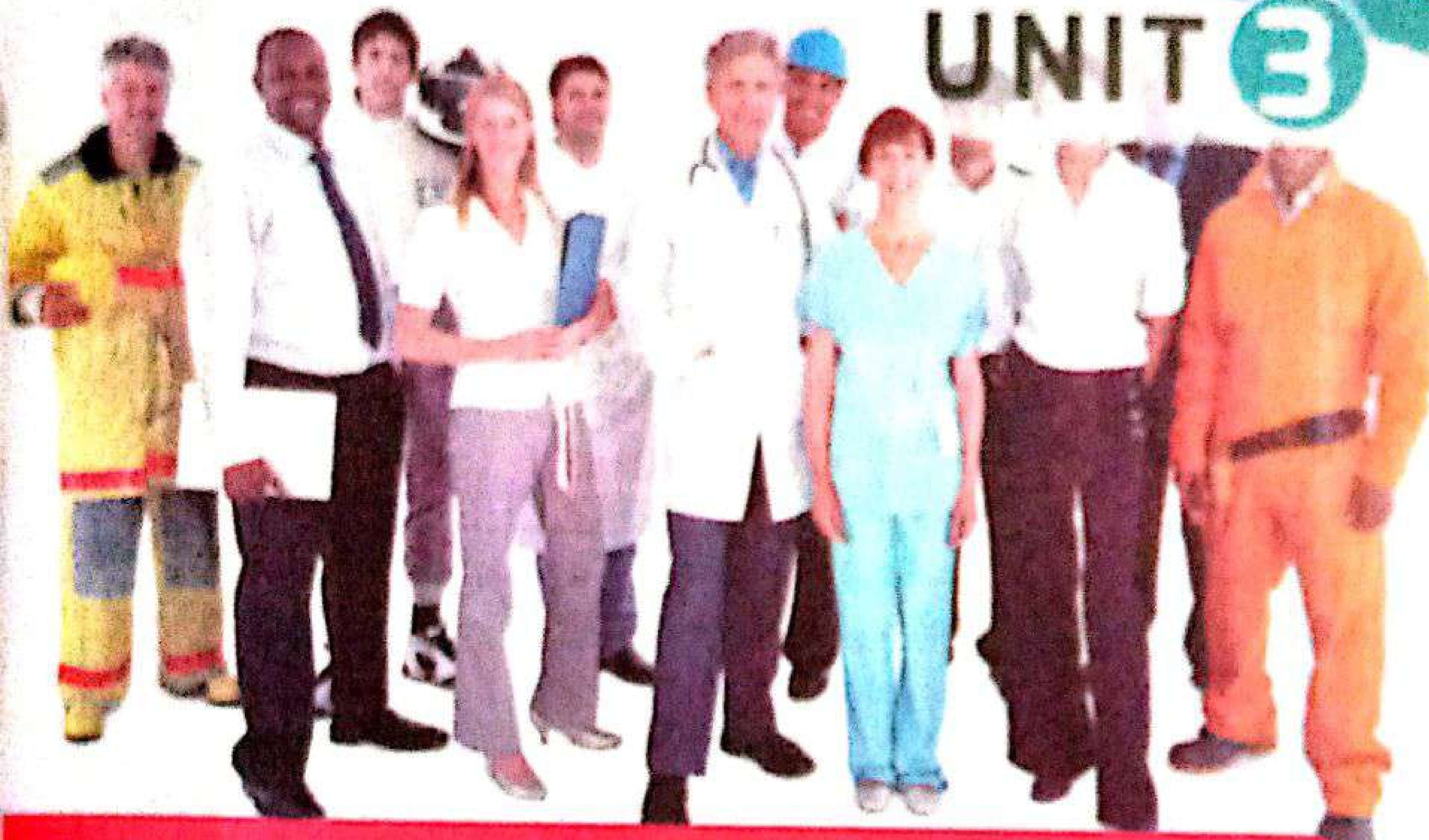
....

....

....

....

UNIT 3



Great jobs

Objectives

Reading:
An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes

Writing:
A paragraph about your partner's past; a text about your hero

Listening:
Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero

Speaking:
Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand

Language:
used to

Life Skills:
Collaboration; communication

"Key Vocabulary"

scientist	عالِم	junior team	الناشئين
surgeon*	طبيب جرَّاح	senior	ى السن / راشد
charity worker	فاعل خير (من يقوم بعمل الخير)	senior team	ق الأول
sports coach	مدرب رياضى	competition	بقة
handball	لعبة كرة اليد	the final	راة النهائية
hero (pl. heroes)	بطل	female	/ مؤنث
junior	ناشىء / مبتدىء	win (won, won)	

Vocabulary

heart problems	مشاكل فى القلب	event	ث
Africa Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الأفريقية	experiment	بة عملية
the World Cup Final	نهائى كأس العالم	Mount Everest	إفرست
Tunisia	دولة تونس	continent	ة
under-19 (adj)	تحت سن ١٩	eco-friendly	يقة للبيئة
player	لاعب	adventure	مرة
goal	مرمى / هدف	organise (d)	م / يؤسس
nuclear scientist	عالم نووى	die (d)	ت
improve (d)		improve (d)	ن / يتحسن
medicine	الطب / دواء	score (d)	ل (أهداف / نقاط)
brave	شجاع	climb (ed)	ق
patient	صبور	attack (ed)	م

Words & Meanings

sports coach	مدرب رياضى	a person who trains or helps people to do a sport
surgeon	طبيب جرَّاح	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill
scientist	عالِم	someone who studies and works in science
charity worker	فاعل خير	helps people or animals that need help
hero	بطل	a person that people admire(1) because they have done something very brave(2) or good

Arabic Mean...
(1) يعجب بـ
(2) شجاع

handball	لعبة كرة اليد	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing[3] the ball into a goal	٣- إلقاء
competitions	مسابقات	events when people try to get a prize by being the best at something	
win	يفوز	to be the first person or team in a game or competition	
junior	ناشىء / مبتدىء	for younger people	
senior	كبير / راشد	for older people	
female	أنثى / مؤنث	a woman or a girl	

Verbs & Nouns that come together

do a job	يؤدى وظيفة / يقوم بمهمة	start a charity	ينشئ مؤسسة خيرية
do / play a sport	يلعب رياضة	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
do experiments	يجرى تجارب عملية	get a prize	يحصل على جائزة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة

Expressions

get married	يتزوج
improve a sport	يتحسن فى رياضة
(be) born into a rich family	يولد لعائلة ثرية
become the number one chess player	يصبح لاعب الشطرنج الأول
help children with heart problems	يساعد أطفال لديهم مشاكل بالقلب

Prepositions

look inside	ينظر بداخل ...
win... against	يفوز بـ.... ضد
lose... against	يخسر... ضد
play for	يلعب لصالح
find out about	يعرف / يكتشف
throw the ball into ...	يلقى بالكرة في ...
good at + n / V-ing	جيد فى

Word Differences

surgeon	طبيب جرَّاح	surgery	عملية جراحية
experiment	تجربة عملية	experience	تجربة حياتية / خبرة
score	يسجل (أهداف / نقاط)	record	يسجل معلومات / صوت
job	وظيفة / مهمة (اسم يعد)	work	عمل (اسم لا يعد)

Words & Opposites

win	يفوز	lose	يخسر	poor	فقير	rich	ثرى
inside	داخل / بالداخل	outside	خارج / بالخارج	young	صغير السن	old	عجوز
female	أنثى / مؤنث	male	ذكر / مذكر				

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يخسر	lost	lost
bear	تلد	bore	born
mean	يعني	meant	meant
meet	يقابل	met	met
become	يصبح	became	become
throw	يرمي / يلقي	threw	thrown



Language Notes

1 • win • earn

- **win (won / won) (a medal - a prize - a competition)**

  ex. All students hope to win the first prize.

- **earn (ed - ed) (money - a living / his living)** مالاً / قوت يومه

  ex. We earn money from our work.

  ex. My dad works hard to earn his living.

2 • lose • miss

- **lose (v) (lost / lost)** (مباراة مثلاً) – يضيع / يفقد (شيء)

  ex. Barcelona lost the last match.

  ex. I lost my keys yesterday.

  ex. He lost a leg in an accident.

- **miss (v) (ed-ed)** شيء / يفتقد شخص (يوحشه)

  ex. I missed the train, so I took the next one.

  ex. I really miss you.

3 • patient

- **patient (adj)**

  ex. You should be patient, the food will be ready soon.

- **patient (n)** مريض

  ex. Doctors examine patients and give them medicine.

4 • as • like

- **as** قبل وظيفة «شخص / شيئ»

  ex. He works as a doctor.

  ex. We use this drink as medicine for cold.

- **like** تستخدم بمعنى «مشابه لـ»

ex. The child speaks like a man.

5 • the first ... to + inf.

- **the first ... to + inf.** يستخدم هذا الإسلوب بمعنى (الأول فى القيام بشيء)

ex. He was the first player to score five goals in a match.

Tapescript SB page (23)

Arabic Meaning

١- يتسلق جبل إفرست
٢- قارة
٣- صديقة للبيئة
٤- مغامرات
٥- أنثى
٦- عالمة نووية
٧- علاج نووي
٨- الطب
٩- مشاكل في القلب
١٠- جرّاح
١١- جمعية خيرية
١٢- يؤسس / ينظم

Photo one shows Omar Samra. He was born in London in 1978. When Omar was twenty-eight, he became the first Egyptian to climb Mount Everest(1) and then he climbed each of the highest mountains in all the continents(2) of the world. In 2009, he started his own eco-friendly(3) travel company to help other people go on travel adventures(4).

Photo two shows Sameera Moussa, Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female(5) nuclear scientist(6) and wanted to use nuclear treatments(7) in medicine(8). She died in 1952.

Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935. He helped people with heart problems(9) for many years. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon*(10) a long time ago. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity(11) for ill children in Aswan.

Photo four shows Hidiya Hanim Barakat. She was born into a rich family in 1898. She used the money she had and the people she knew to help others. She built hospitals, organised(12) schools for girls and she helped to look after poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969, when she died.

Say it correctly

* surgeon

ينطق المقطع الملون مثل حرفي (ir) فى كلمة (bird)

Reading

SB page (24)



Egyptian heroes!

The Egyptian handball team[1] are heroes[2]! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations[3] in Tunisia* in 2020. They won the final[4] against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[5] won the under-19[6] World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[7] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions[8] again!

Arabic Mean...
- فريق كرة اليد
- أبطال
- كأس الأمم الأفريقية
- المباراة النهائية
- فريق الناشئين
- تحت سن ١٩
- فريق الكبار / الفريق الأول
- مسابقات

Say it correctly

* Tunisia
ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل حرف (u) في كلمة tube وينطق حرف s مثل z

Reading

WB page (87)



My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition[1] for a team in our city. The team didn't win[2], but it was in the final. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important senior team. He was very pleased[3]. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it!

Arabic Meanin...
- مسابقة للناشئين
- يفوز
- مسرور

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in ....
a handball b chess c swimming d karate

2- Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart ....

a trips | b competitions | c problems | d experiments

3- The Egyptian player won the gold medal, he's a real ....

a coach | b junior | c hero | d trainer

4- A/An .... does experiments to study and find out about how things work. WB

a event | b scientist | c worker | d hero

5- A .... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. WB

a scientist | b nurse | c chemist | d surgeon

6- The .... Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019. SB

a poor | b junior | c general | d moral

7- Mohamed Salah plays .... Liverpool.

a for | b to | c at | d from

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Tunisia has one of the best handball .... in Africa.

a teams | b hearts | c surgeons | d flats

2- A .... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something. SB

a charity | b coach | c competition | d team

3- A .... is a girl or woman. SB

a man | b female | c male | d child

4- The Egyptian handball team won an important .... in 2020. SB

a experiment | b station | c competition | d expression

5- Magdy Yacoub is a great charity ....

a worker | b maker | c player | d trainer

6- .... is a sport with seven players in a team. SB

a Tennis | b Boxing | c Snorkelling | d Handball

7- To .... means to be the first in a game or competition. SB

a miss | b win | c lose | d earn

8- We always .... experiments at the school lab every Monday.

a make | b do | c look | d fly

9- The .... Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018. SB

a senior | b final | c nuclear | d ancient

10- Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup ....

a Final | b Total | c Ball | d Goal

Grammar

Remember: The past simple tense

ون زمن الماضي البسيط كالآتي:

(فعل فى التصريف الثانى) + فاعل

م الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط إلى نوعين:

1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

ى الأفعال التى يضاف إليها (d) أو (ed) أو(ied) فى التصريف الثانى لتكوّن صيغة الماضى البسيط:

الفعل فى المصدر	الفعل فى التصريف الثانى	الإضافة
cook	cooked	ل غير منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له ed
arrive	arrived	ل منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له d
play	played	ل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف متحرك يضاف له ed
study	studied	ل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن تحذف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied)
stop	stopped	بض الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك يكرر الحرف الأخير ويضاف ed

2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى مثل:

hit → hit	teach → taught	see → saw

ادرس تصريف الأفعال (have) (do) (be):

	Present simple	Past simple
be يكون	am / is / are	was / were
do يفعل	do / does	did
have يمتلك / لديه	have / has	had

ر الكلمات الآتية عن زمن الماضى البسيط:

- last (week - month - year - night ...) السابق
- once (upon a time) ذات مرة
- ago منذ
- yesterday أمس
- this morning هذا الصباح
- in the past فى الماضى
- in 2016 فى عام ٢٠١٦

ستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن:

فعل بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.
ex. We went to Aswan for a holiday last winter.

عادات تكررت في الماضى.
ex. When I was young, I rode a bike.

سرد قصة.
ex. The naughty boy woke up, had breakfast and left for school.

- نفي الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + did not (didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. I did not (didn't) arrive at school late.

• كما يمكن أن نستخدم (never) في النفي بوضعها قبل الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط ويبقى الفعل ماضيًا.

ex. I never lost money.

- للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط بـ «هل..؟» نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ..?

ex. Did you watch TV last night? - Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

- للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط بـ «كلمة استفهام..؟» نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. What time did you go to bed?

Check ✓

Read and correct the underlined words:

1- I watched a nice film **next** week. (..................)

2- **Do** your parents help you at school when you were young? (..................)

3- Why **doesn't** Adel take his medicine yesterday? (..................)

The past simple passive المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط

From التكوين

(مبني للمعلوم Active) الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل + مفعول

(مبني للمجهول Passive) نائب الفاعل + was / were + p.p... + (by + object مفعول)

ex. A clever engineer built this house.
= This house was built (by a clever engineer).

ex. The children cleaned the rooms.
= The rooms were cleaned (by the children).

- غالبًا ما يستخدم فعل **(bear / bore / born)** في المبني للمجهول لتحديد متى أو أين ولد شخص:

ex. Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935, in Bilbeis.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When.......... your grandfather born?
a is b had c was d did

2- The Pyramids were .... thousands of years ago.
a built b build c building d to build

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My brother, Tarek .... to Luxor last winter.

a travelled   b travels   c travel   d travelling

2- My grandfather .... work in 2015.

a stopping   b stop   c will stop   d stopped

3- I visited the Egyptian Museum two years ....

a in   b ago   c for   d when

4- **A:** Did you win the first prize?

B: No, I ....

a didn't   b don't   c do   d did

5- When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he .... a leg.

a is lost   b to lose   c loses   d lost

6- Hossam .... to Ali's birthday party yesterday.

a invited   b was inviting   c was invited   d is invited

7- Egypt's football team .... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.

a win   b won   c to win   d winning

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Last night, I <u>do</u> many things. (..........)

2- <u>Do</u> you meet your friends yesterday? (..........)

3- Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time <u>age</u>. (..........)

4- Magdy Yacoub <u>was helped</u> people with heart problems for many years. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Magdy Yacoub .... born in 1935.

a has   b is   c be   d was

2- My brother bought his car two years ....

a ago b last c once d since

3- I .... a bike when I was young.

a having b has c had d have

4- When .... you have dinner last night?

a were b had c will d did

5- Tamer .... know what marks he got in the last test.

a don't b didn't c do d isn't

6- Did you .... to the museum last week?

a go b went c going d gone

7- He .... a junior chess competition when he was only 12! WB

a wins b win c won d to win

8- Why .... those students punished by the teacher yesterday?

a was b were c are d have

9- In 2016, a thief .... me and stole my money.

a attacked b attacks c attacking d attack

10- He started playing chess when he was very little and he .... always very good at it. WB

a does b was c has d were

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Did you **bought** a new T-shirt yesterday? (..............)

2- Waleed **be** a farmer for more than thirty years. WB (..............)

3- Aunt Leila **lives** in England from 1995 to 2010. WB (..............)

4- How long did it **took** you to write this story? (..............)

"Key Vocabulary"

charity	جمعية خيرية / أعمال خيرية	volunteer	
the countryside	الريف	great grandfather	الأكبر
emergency	حالة طوارىء	great grandmother	الكبرى
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	body	
scary	مرعب / مخيف	enjoy (ed)	
proud	فخور	start (ed)	

Parts of the body

In your head		In your body	
brain	المخ	heart	
eyes	العينان	lungs	
mouth	الفم	stomach	

Nouns & Verbs

Noun		Verb	
cut	جرح	cut (cut / cut)	/ يقطع
pump	مضخة	pump (ed)	
plant	نبات	plant (ed)	
infection	عدوى	infect (ed)	

Vocabulary

family history	تاريخ العائلة	broken bones	مكسورة
nature	الطبيعة	dirty water	
terrible	فظيع	special	خاص
such as	مثل	jewellery	
earthquake	زلزال	furniture	
serious	خطير	organisation	/ هيئة
school project	مشروع مدرسي	research (ed)	بحث
the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر	play (ed)	(على آلة موسيقية) / يلعب
ideas	أفكار	mend (ed)	/ يجبر كسر
burns	حروق	cook (ed)	

Words & Meanings

Word	Definition	Arabic Meaning
charity جمعية خيرية / أعمال خيرية	- an organisation[1] that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need[2]	١- منظمة ٢- فى احتياج
the countryside الريف	the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature	٣- فيضان ٤- مرض
emergency حالة طوارىء	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about	٥- إصابة ٦- حاد ٧- يتنفس
natural disaster كارثة طبيعية	something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood[3] or an earthquake	
infection عدوى	a disease[4] in a part of your body	
proud فخور	If you are proud of someone, you feel pleased with them. This is because you think they are or have done something very good.	
volunteer متطوع	someone who works for no money to help people	
cut جرح	an injury[5] when something cuts you, made by something sharp[6]	
brain المخ	it tells the parts of our body what to do.	
heart القلب	it pumps blood around the body.	
lungs الرئتان	- they take in air into the body and help us to breathe[7].	

Expressions

Expression	Arabic
work **for no money**	يعمل بدون مقابل مالي
feel pleased with	يشعر بسعادة تجاه
do a school project on	يقوم بمشروع مدرسى عن
play the piano	يعزف على البيانو
have a hobby	لديه هواية
pump blood **around** the body	يضخ الدم حول الجسم
stop infection	يمنع العدوى
mend broken bones	يجبر العظام المكسورة
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح
pass an exam	يجتاز امتحان

Prepositions

Preposition	Arabic
proud **of**	فخور بـ
take **in** air	تأخذ الهواء
write **down**	يدون / يسجل
ways **to** help	طرق للمساعدة
people **with** burns	أشخاص تعاني من حروق
pay (someone) **for**	يدفع مالاً (لشخص) من أجل
fall **off** his bike	يسقط من على دراجته
cut... **into** small pieces	يقطع ... إلى أجزاء صغيرة
different **to**	مختلف عن

Word Differences

the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر	the Red Cross	الصليب الأحمر
breathe	يتنفس	breath	النَفَس
heart	القلب	hurt	يؤذى / يضر
life	حياة	live	يعيش

Words & Opposites

natural	طبيعي	artificial	اصطناعي	important	مهم	unimportant	
different	مختلف	the same	نفس (الشيء / الشخص)	sick	مريض	healthy / well	جيدة
ancient	قديم جدًا	modern	حديث				

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Particip…
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn / se…
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left
cut	يقطع	cut	cut



Language Notes

1 • feel • fall • fill

- **feel (felt - felt) + adj.**

  ex. I felt pleased with my brother. He won a prize.

- **fall (fell - fallen)** يسقط

  ex. The boy fell off his bike and broke his arm.

- **fill (ed-ed)**

  ex. Hany filled his football with air.

2 • jewellery • furniture

لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات لاتعد **(uncountable)** وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أى تأخذ فعل مفرد **(is - has - was - v+s)**

ex. The furniture in our house is new and expensive.

3 • stop

- **stop + V-ing.** (عن شئ كان يفعله)

  ex. Omar stopped smoking last year.

- **stop + to + inf.** لكى

  ex. On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruits.

Pastimes — SB page (28)

[illegible]

Reading

SB page (28)

Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients because they wrote down that [illegible] thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. However, they used to think that the blood also pumped air to our lungs. They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain did, but they did not know how important it was.

Arabic Meaning

[illegible]

Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants[9] to help people with burns*[10] and to stop infections[11]. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones[12] and sew cuts,[13] but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to think that an animal's eye[14] helped people who could not see!

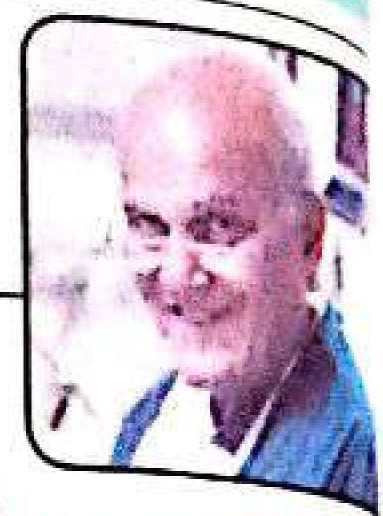
- النباتات
- حروق
- العدوى
- يجبر العظام المكسورة
- يخيط الجروح
- عين الحيوان

Say it correctly

- * pump — ينطق حرف **u** فى هذه الكلمة كما ينطق فى كلمة **but**
- * **burn** — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة **bird** مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأخير

Reading

WB page (88)



Magdy Yacoub

We should all be proud of[1] Magdy Yacoub. He was born[2] in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a special[3] hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacou started a charity[4] for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live lon lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

Arabic Meanin

1. فخورون بـ
2. ولد
3. من نوع خاص
4. جمعية خيرية

Reading

WB page (89)



Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today's. Poor children didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school[1] when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy[2] playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave[3] their houses to the sons[4]. However, they used to leave things inside the house, such as jewellery[5] and furniture[6], to the daughters[7].

Arabic Meaning

1. يبدأ الدراسة
2. يستمتع بـ
3. يترك
4. الأبناء
5. مجوهرات
6. أثاث
7. البنات

Exercises on Lessons ③ & ④

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The heart ___________ blood around the body. SB

a takes in b drinks c pumps d plants

2- When I am at home, I ___________ playing computer games.

a enjoy b mend c interest d enable

3- ___________ the meat into small pieces before you cook it. WB

a Boil b Mend c Cut d Pump

4- ___________ is usually made of gold.

a Furniture b Jewellery c Information d Sheets

5- Mona's mother is a/an ___________ at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work. WB

a coach b volunteer c patient d adult

6- The ___________ is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. SB

a mountain b earthquake c countryside d crescent

7- A/An ___________ helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. SB

a school b charity c museum d theater

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The ___________ tells the parts of our body what to do. SB

a heart b stomach c eye d brain

2- A natural ___________ is a terrible event, such as an earthquake. SB

a water b science c gas d disaster

3- Ola went to a surgeon to ___________ the cut in her hand.

a cook b break c sew d plant

4- Dirty water from a river can .... you if you drink it.

a infect b enjoy c clean d mend

5- The little child .... off his bike and broke his leg.

a felt b filled c failed d fell

6- During the lesson, I wrote .... the ideas which the teacher suggeste[d]

a about b down c over d above

7- Children in Egypt .... school at the age of four.

a start b walk c finish d play

8- You can only open this door in a/an ...., such as a fire.

a pleasure b charity c emergency d organisation

9- My grandmother was born in 1955 and my .... grandmother was born [in] 1930!

a big b senior c high d great

10- If you are .... of someone, you feel pleased with them because they [are] or have done something very good.

a proud b bored c interested d keen

Grammar

used to اعتاد أن

تذكر أن:

يستخدم الفعل (use) بمعنى يستخدم أو يستهلك:

ex. Can I use your mobile phone, please? **ex.** Sorry, I used all the flour in the bag.

➤ عند إضافة حرف جر to إلى صيغة الماضى يصبح معناه اعتاد أن (فى الماضى)

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات **subject فاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل اعتاد أن**

- نستخدم (used to + inf.) للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال تكررت فى الماضى لا تحدث الآن.

- يمكنك استخدام زمن الماضى البسيط بدلاً من used to + inf.

used to play = played

ex. I used to eat = ate much bread, but now I don't.

Negative النفي

didn't use to + inf. لم يعتاد أن

ex. I didn't use to drive cars when I was younger, but I drive cars now.

Question السؤال

- يمكن أن نسأل بـ /(هل ...؟) كالتالى:

Did + subject فاعل + use to + inf....? هل اعتدت أن...؟

ex. Did you use to read books when you were a child?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

➤ يمكن أن نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام كما يلى:

كلمة استفهام + did + subject فاعل + use to + inf ...?

ex. Where did you use to work before you worked as a teacher?

- I used to work in a big company.

Check ✓

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- Huda's mother .... be a nurse ten years ago.
a uses to b used to c used d use to

2- .... you use to go to museums when you were a child?
a Do b Are c Did d Have

3- Manal .... use to like maths when she was at school.
a not b doesn't c never d didn't

Exercises on Lessons (3) & (4)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Ali used to ...... up early for school.

a gets b got c get d getting

2- Yasser's grandmother ...... work in a hospital.

a used to b is used c uses to d is using to

3- I ...... to do sport in the club when I was a child.

a use b uses c using d used

4- Dina ...... money to a charity, but now she does.

a didn't use to give b gave c doesn't give d used to give

5- ...... you use to go on boat trips when you lived in Aswan?

a Do b Does c Did d Are

6- Before he got married, Yasser's dad ...... live in Cairo.

a was using b didn't use to c uses to d don't use to

7- Did Hossam Hassan ...... captain of the Egyptian Football team?

a uses to be b was c be d use to be

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What **do** your father use to do in the past? (......

2- When I was young, I used to **playing** tennis. (......

3- What games did you **used** to play with your friends? WB (......

4- Nour El Sherbini **wins** the World Squash Championships in 2020. SB (......

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Dad ...... drink coffee, but now he doesn't.

a used b use to c used to d uses

2- I used to ------ basketball, but I don't now. SB

a played   b play   c playing   d plays

3- Yasser's uncle ------ live in Tunisia. SB

a used to   b used   c using   d is used to

4- Where ------ you use to live before you came to Cairo?

a does   b do   c doing   d did

5- My father ------ play chess when he was a child.

a used to   b use   c using to   d didn't used

6- We used to ------ in the countryside, but now we live in the city.

a lived   b live   c lives   d living

7- When you were ten, ------ you use to live in a different house? SB

a do   b does   c did   d to do

8- When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ------ play the piano every day. SB

a used to   b was used to   c was using to   d use to

9- There ------ a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. WB

a weren't   b didn't   c isn't   d didn't use to be

10- My grandfather ------ football when he was young, but he can't walk now. WB

a play   b used to play   c use to play   d plays

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- How did you **used** to go to school? WB (-------------)

2- **Do** you use to have a lot of homework? WB (-------------)

3- My father used to **worked** in a tourist company five years ago. (-------------)

4- Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather **doesn't** use to know how to drive a car. SB (-------------)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills مجاب عنه فى جزء)

What is a hero?

Key Vocabulary

sure	متأكد	street cleaners	[illegible]
heroic	بطولي	manager	
rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة	scared	

Vocabulary

nurse	ممرضة	squash	[illegible]
education	التعليم	championship	
fire fighter	رجل الإطفاء	society	
police officer	ضابط بوليس	Athens	[illegible]
fantastic	رائع	Parthenon	[illegible]
captain	كابتن (قائد فريق)	reason	[illegible]
Squash Championship	بطولة الاسكواش	continue (d)	
art	الفن / الرسم	agree (d)	
painting	لوحة فنية / الرسم بالألوان	collect (ed)	
statue*	تمثال	study (ied) (n)	[illegible]
without	بدون		

Words & Meanings

heroic	بطولي	very brave or great
manager	مدير	a person whose job is to organise[*] people in a company or business
scared	مرعوب	frightened[*] or afraid that something bad could happen

Expressions

work hard	يعمل بجد
try their best	يحاولون بأقصى ما لديهم من جهد
do things	يفعل أشياء
do something useful	يفعل شيء مفيد
put (someone) first	يضع (الشخص) في مقدمة أولوياته
keep our cities clean	الحفاظ على مدننا نظيفة
get better	يتحسن

Prepositions

at university	[illegible]
at night	
answer to a question	[illegible]
in 2020	[illegible]
on TV	[illegible]
scared of	[illegible]

Confusing words

عادة ما نخلط بين معاني الكلمات الآتية، ادرس الفرق بينهم جيدًا:

• **to** حرف جر بمعنى (إلى / أن / لكي) **ex.** I went to the zoo yesterday. **ex.** Omar wants to be a doctor. **ex.** He studies hard to be a doctor.	• **too** ظرف يعنى (جدًا / أكثر من الازم) **ex.** This box is too heavy, I can't carry it. • **two** اثنان **ex.** Dad bought two books yesterday.
• **know** فعل بمعنى (يعرف) **ex.** This is Ali, Do you know him?	• **no** لا (تستخدم للإجابة عن سؤال بهل فى النفى) **ex. A:** Do you have a car? **B:** No, I don't.
• **their** ضمير ملكية للفاعل الغائب الجمع (They) **ex.** The kids are eating their meals.	• **there** ظرف مكان للبعيد بمعنى (هناك) **ex.** Aswan is a big city. I live there.
• **its** ضمير ملكية للفاعل الغائب غير العاقل **ex.** The cat drank its milk.	• **it's** - اختصار (it is) ويليها (n / adj): **ex.** I like pizza, it is (it's) delicious. - اختصار it has + n **ex.** I like my house, it has (it's) big rooms.
• **than** حرف جر يستخدم مع صفات المقارنة **ex.** Magdy is taller than me.	• **then** حال بمعنى بعد ذلك **ex.** I got a degree. I then got a good job.

Word Differences

hard	بجد / صعب	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
scared	مرعوب	scary	مخيف / مرعب
captain	كابتن (قائد فريق)	captain	قبطان (قائد سفينة)
painting	الرسم (بالألوان)	drawing	الرسم (بالرصاص / بالجاف)

Words & Opposites

useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد	true	حقيقى	untrue	غير حقيقى
sure	متأكد	unsure	غير متأكد	agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Particip...
put	يضع	put	put
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
teach	يعلم	taught	taught

Language Notes

• **reason** • **cause**

• **reason (for)** تفسير

ex. What is the reason for leaving your job?

• **cause (of)**

ex. Do you know the cause of the accident?

Tapescript SB page (29)



Mona : What is a hero, Huda?

Huda : I think a hero is someone who is very brave.

Mona : What do you mean?

Huda : I mean a hero isn't scared(1) of anything.

Mona : I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries his or her best.

Huda : I'm not sure(2) what you mean.

Mona : In other words, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda : It's also about putting other people first.

Mona : Sorry, I don't understand(3).

Huda : I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona : Yes, I agree!

Arabic Mean...
- مرعوب
- متأكد
- يفهم

Say it correctly

* statue

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق (choo) في كلمة (choose)

Reading

SB page (30)



My heroic mother

Today, my mother is an important nurse(1), Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued(2) to work hard(3) but did not stop her studies(4), and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.

Now, she works in a big hospital in New Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work(5), because most of them got better(6). She is also a manager(7) and she helps to teach younger nurses.

I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education(8) is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

Arabic Meaning

١- ممرضة
٢- استمرت
٣- تعمل بجد
٤- دراسات
٥- عمل بطولى
٦- يتحسن
٧- مديرة
٨- التعليم

Reading

WB page (91)



Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed.

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay(1) for her studies, but that is not the reason(2) I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency(3) and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind(4). I now know that she is one of the most important nurses in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!

Arabic Meaning

١- تساعد فى نفقة
٢- سبب / مبرر
٣- حالة طوارىء صحية
٤- عطوفة

Exercises on Lessons (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- This nurse won a prize for her .... work.
a silly b useless c heroic d ugly

2- My father works as a/an .... in a big factory.
a manager b teacher c tour guide d farmer

3- Are you taller .... your brother?
a that b then c this d than

4- You should be .... that the food you eat is healthy.
a true b sure c care d able

5- I don't think I .... the answer to this question.
a know b show c no d go

6- The little girl is always .... of dogs. She doesn't like them.
a scary b proud c scared d fond

7- Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is .... most famous building.
a it is b it's c its' d its

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Good people work .... to achieve their goals.
a hardly b difficult c easily d hard

2- That poor girl works to help .... for her study.
a to paying b for paying c pay d paying

3- Some people are scared .... ants.
a of b about c to d at

4- My brother is trying his .... to pass this year's exams.
a better b best c good d the best

5- Street .... help to keep our cities clean.
a builders b makers c walkers d cleaners

6- Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, ...
a too b two c to d twice

7- I think rubbish .... can be heroes. SB

a reviewers b managers c collectors d bakers

8- I asked Samy about the .... for his happiness.

a reason b season c cause d because

9- We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was .... WB

a there b their c they are d they're

10- Kind teachers always give presents to .... clever students.

a there b they're c their d they are

Language Functions

Checking you understand التأكد من فهمك

◄ عندما نتأكد من فهمنا لموضوع نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- What do you mean? ماذا تقصد / تعنى؟
- I'm (not) sure what you mean. إنى متأكد / لست متأكدًا مما تعنى.
- Sorry, I don't understand. آسف، لا أفهم.

◄ عند توضيح معلومة خاصة بموضوع، نستخدم العبارات الأتية:

- I mean... أقصد / أعنى...
- In other words, ... بعبارات أخرى، ...

◄ للموافقة / للرفض على رأى نستخدم:

- I (don't) agree! أوافق / لا أوافق!

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Karim : I think that all teachers are heroes.

Tarek : What ❶ .... you mean?

Karim : I ❷ ...., without teachers, we would not learn anything.

Tarek : There's the internet.

Karim : Sorry, I don't ❸ ....

Tarek : The internet can help you learn.

Karim : I'm not ❹ .... what you mean.

Tarek : I mean, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.

Karim : I don't ❺ .... We will always need teache[rs]

Tarek : That's true.

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Emad is used .... table tennis.

a play b to play c playing d to playing

2- Who .... you yesterday?

a called b did called c call did d to call

3- My dad .... chess when he was young.

a plays always b always played c always plays d played alway[s]

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Hossam used to play squash. Now, he **didn't**. (..........

2- A long time **since**, I went to London. (..........

Writing Skills

Paragraphs

[فقر]ات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

❶ What is a hero?

A hero is someone who can be brave when they face a problem. A her[o] is a person who is able to help others. A person can become a hero b[y] saving someone who is in danger. A hero is someone who puts people fir[st]. A hero thinks about other people before they think about themselves.

Fire fighters are heroes. They think about saving people. Sometimes [a] hero can be a teacher. He/She can teach you to read and write. That wi[ll] make a difference to your life. We have a lot of heroes in Egypt who we'[re] proud of.

2 How life used to be different in ancient Egypt

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. Children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons.

The Ancient Egyptians used to leave jewellery and furniture inside their houses to the daughters. They lived around the Nile River where they could grow crops. They built pyramids. You can still see these pyramids today. They knew a lot about maths, medicine and farming.

3 A person that you are proud of (your hero)

My mother is a person I am very proud of. When she was younger, she used to study very hard. She wanted to be a doctor. She used to work to help pay for her studies.

In 2020, there was a health emergency. Many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks. She helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. She is one of the most important doctors in Cairo. I am very proud of her!

Unit 3 Review

"Key Vocabulary Review"

scientist	عالِم	emergency	طوارئ
surgeon	طبيب جرّاح	natural disaster	طبيعية
charity worker	فاعل خير (من يقوم بعمل الخير)	proud	
sports coach	مدرب رياضي	volunteer	
handball	لعبة كرة اليد	great grandfather	الأكبر
hero (pl. heroes)	بطل	great grandmother	الكبرى
junior	ناشىء / مبتدىء	body	
junior team	فريق الناشئين	manager	
senior	كبير فى السن / راشد	scared	
senior team	الفريق الأول	sure	
competition	مسابقة	heroic	
the final	المباراة النهائية	street cleaners	نظافة الشوارع
win (won, won)	يفوز	rubbish collectors	جمع القمامة
charity	جمعية خيرية / أعمال خيرية	enjoy (ed)	بـ
the countryside	الريف	start (ed)	

Grammar Review

1- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل. تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة يضاف لها (d / ed / ied) وأفعال غير منتظمة (شاذة) والتي تحفظ كما هي:

walk ⟶ walked **see ⟶ saw**

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى ولسرد أحداث قصة.

تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع زمن الماضى البسيط.

yesterday أمس / last (week - month - year - night - weekend)

(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) الماضى / (الليلة - عطلة نهاية الأسبوع) الماضية.

in + سنة ماضية / ago منذ / once ذات مرة

ننفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط باستخدام (did not = didn't) قبل مصدر الفعل:

فاعل + did not = didn't + inf.

ex. I did not (didn't) watch the film yesterday.

- للسؤال عن الماضى البسيط بـ «هل..؟» نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + inf...?

ex. Did you travel to Alexandria last night?
- Yes, I travelled to Alexandria last night.

- ويمكن أن نجيب بإجابة مختصرة كالآتى:

- Yes, I did. الإجابة فى الإثبات
- No, I didn't. الإجابة فى النفى

- للسؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» في زمن الماضي البسيط نتبع الصيغة الآتية:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf...?

ex. Where did you buy this laptop?

2- used to اعتاد أن

١. نستخدم used to + inf. للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال كانت متكررة فى الماضى ولا تحدث الآن.

ex. I used to visit my uncle's farm when I was young.

٢. ننفي (used to) كالآتي:

فاعل + did not (didn't) + use to + inf.

ex. I didn't use to sleep early when I was in Alexandria.

٣. نسأل بـ (هل) عن (used to) كالآتي:

Did + فاعل + use to + inf ...?

ex. Did you use to read stories when you were younger?
- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

٤. نسأل بـ (كلمة استفهام) عن (used to) كما يلي:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + use to + inf...?

ex. How did you use to go to school?
- I used to take the school bus.

Language Functions Review

Checking you understand التأكد من فهمك

عندما نتأكد من فهمنا لموضوع نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- What do you mean?
- I'm (not) sure what you mean.
- Sorry, I don't understand.

عند توضيح معلومة خاصة بموضوع، تستخدم العبارات الأتية:

- I mean...
- In other words, ...

للموافقة / لرفض على رأى تستخدم:

- I (don't) agree!

General Exercises on Unit 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Abdullah : Do you know that the Egyptian football team won the Africa Cup of Nations?

Sama : That's great, but when ❶ .... they wo...

Abdullah : The last time was ❷ .... 20...

Sama : Oh, no! That was many years ago.

Abdullah : Yes, but they ❸ .... the cup three times one after the oth...

Sama : I don't understand you. ❹ .... do you mea...

Abdullah : I mean that Egypt won the cup in 2006, 2008 and 2010.

Sama : Wow! That was a great achievement!

Abdullah : You are right.

Sama : I'm ❺ .... of the Egyptian football tea...

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A .... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
a sports coach b scientist c teacher d professor

2- You can give money to a .... to help poor people.
a beach b charity c farm d cinema

3- You should .... sport to keep healthy.
a take b make c give d do

4- I used to read books, but now I ....
a didn't b don't c am not d will not

5- A/An .... does a job without being paid.
a patient b engineer c volunteer d adult

6- I started Preparatory School a year ....
a at b ago c in d for

7- The .... take in air and help us to breathe.
a lungs b arms c eyes d ears

8- Adam fell off his bike and had a big .... on his arm.
a pump b way c infection d cut

9- How did people use to .... in the past?

a travels   b travelled   c travel   d travelling

10- I bought .... books yesterday. WB

a two   b to   c too   d toe

11- My uncle Rashid .... born in 1961. WB

a were   b was   c is   d does

12- A/An .... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about. SB

a emergency   b charity   c nature   d organisation

13- This book is about some .... Egyptian people who we are all proud of.

a useless   b silly   c dangerous   d heroic

14- The .... of our company is active and kind.

a police officer   b manager   c teacher   d farmer

15- My uncle .... to be a police officer.

a using   b is used   c used   d uses

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- I <u>go</u> to primary school for six years. SB (............)

2- My uncle lived in Gize **<u>for</u>** 2016. (............)

3- Tamer didn't **<u>used</u>** to study hard at school. (............)

4- Yesterday, we **<u>have</u>** lunch in a big restaurant. (............)

5- **<u>Do</u>** you use to do sport when you were a child? (............)

6- Where **<u>does</u>** you use to live in the past? (............)

4 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills مجاب عنه فى جزء)

How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST 3 UNIT 3

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker's parents lived in .... when they were younger.
 a Cairo b Luxor c Giza d Aswan

2- They moved to Port Said in ....
 a 2005 b 2000 c 2006 d 1990

3- The speaker's father got a job in Cairo .... years ago.
 a 10 b 12 c 15 d 20

4- They moved to the bigger .... a year later when the speaker was born
 a flat b house c village d villa

B Language Functions

2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.
Ali : What do you ❶ ....
Omar : I ❷ ...., we need rubbish collecto
Ali : Sorry, I don't ❸ ....
Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!
Ali : That's ❹ .... What about street cleaners
Omar : I'm not ❺ .... What do you mea
Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.
Omar : Yes, that's true! They help to keep our cities clean.
Ali : I agree!

C Reading Comprehension

3 ➤ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner restaurants.

One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it w lovely warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. **It** jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?

2- Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The waiter gave Salma a bad ---------.

a meal b fish c cat d look

4- The restaurant was --------- to put the sign.

a bad b right c wrong d rude

5- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the --------- .

a fish b table c cat d piece

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A --------- helps people or animals that need help. WB

a charity worker b sports coach

c nuclear scientist d fruit seller

2- When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the ---------? WB

a side b earth c countryside d continent

3- I always give money to a/an --------- that helps poor children. WB

a medicine b library c history d charity

4- My uncle --------- a fire fighter, but now he is a police officer. SB

a used to be b is c uses to be d were

5- This is the town where I --------- .

a bore b was born c bear d to bear

6- Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye --------- . WB

a infection b part c nature d look

7- We should help --------- collectors and keep our city clean.

a water b money c stamp d rubbish

8- She helped to look .... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.

a for   b in   c from   d after

9- Where .... live before you moved to Alexandria?

a are you   b do you   c you used to   d did you use to

10- Hany .... doing his homework an hour ago.

a starts   b started   c start   d starting

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- In 1990, he **becomes** the number one chess player in our city. (..........)

2- Did you visit the Pyramids when you **are** young? (..........)

3- Hany **used** eat much chocolate when he was young. (..........)

4- Amany used to **playing** music when she was at school. (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills ...فى جزء

A person that you are proud of (your hero)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 93 - 94

"Key Vocabulary"

Antarctica	القارة القطبية الجنوبية (أنتاركتيكا)	maths test	اختبار فى الرياضيات
advertisement	إعلان	dark	مظلم
experience	تجربة حياتية	daily life	الحياة اليومية
weather	الطقس	look forward to	يتطلع إلى

Tapescript SB Page (32)



Dalia : Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history. Can I ask you some questions?

Dad : Of course, what do you want to know?

Dalia : Where did you live when you were a child? Was it in Luxor?

Dad : No, I moved to Luxor when I was a teenager. When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

Dalia : Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

Dad : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents. We used to live in my grandparents' house?

Dalia : What time did you usually get up?

Dad : Very early! On a school day , I got up at about 4.30 am!

Dalia : Really? Why did you get up so early?

Dad : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

Dalia : How did you travel to school?

Dad : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

Dalia : What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

Dad : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

REVIEW A

Reading

SB page (33)



Life in Antarctica

I used to work as a scientist[1] at a university. Then I saw a job advertisement[2] for scientists to work in Antarctica[3] for a year and I thought it looked interesting.

Some things are the same as home! We usually get up at about 7 a.m. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

At the moment it is winter so it is dark[4] all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy. There are only 20 people working here now. I m my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience[5]!

Arabic Mean

عالم
إعلان
القارة القطبية
الجنوبية
مظلم
تجربة حياتية

TEST 4 Review A

A Listening

ص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker used to work as a/an ....

a teacher b engineer c scientist d farmer

2- The speaker saw a job ....

a advertisement b poster c uniform d money

3- The job was in a big ....

a company b city c school d factory

4- The speaker thought the job looked ....

a boring b hard c interesting d easy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy : What are you doing?

Ayman: I'm ① .... a school project about my fa

Samy : Do you know ② .... about your family his

Ayman: Not too much.

Samy : Where did your great grandfather live?

Ayman: He ❸ .... in the countryside.

Samy : What did he do?

Ayman: He was a charity ❹ .... at the Red Crescent.

Samy : I think he was a helpful man.

Ayman: Yes and I'm very ❺ .... of him.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tamer works at a bank. He is the manager. He starts work every day at 8:00 a.m. He finishes work every day at 6:00 p.m. He lives very close to the bank. He walks to work every day. His brother and sister also work at the same bank. But, they don't live close to it. **They** drive to work. They start work at 9:00 a.m. Tamer likes his job. He is very good at it. People in the bank like Tamer because he is very kind and friendly. They say hello to him when they come to the bank. Tamer likes to talk to them and make them feel happy. All managers should be like Tamer.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where does Tamer work?

....

2- What time does he start work?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Tamer goes to work ....

a by bike   b on foot   c in a car   d by train

4- The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....

a the cars   b Tarek's parents

c people   d Tarek's brother and sister

5- Tarek is a/an ....

a manager   b worker   c officer   d waiter

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- **A:** How .... Magid go to his work every day?

B: He goes by bus.

a did   b do   c does   d is

2- Amir is carrying the eggs .... because he doesn't want to drop them.

a carefully b hardly c carelessly d noisily

3- Osama .... the tennis game easily because his brother is only four.

a designs b prays c drives d wins

4- .... did you live when you were a child?

a What b Where c Why d Who

5- In this photo, I am lying lazily on the .... because it is very hot.

a beach b arch c ruin d view

6- The view from the top of the tower is ....

a expensive b careful c ancient d attractive

7- This train is going .... so that it does not arrive late.

a fast b hard c slowly d quietly

8- Where .... you use to eat pizza when you lived in Cairo?

a do b have c did d are

9- The girl .... happily on the bed and talking on the phone.

a is sitting b sit c has sat d is sat

10- What .... in the police station yesterday morning?

a you were doing b are you doing

c were you doing d do you do

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- **When** time did you usually get up? SB (..........)

2- Huda and Fareeda **studies** hard because they have an English test next week. WB (..........)

3- Nabila is talking **quiet** to her friend because they are working in a library. WB (..........)

4- What subjects did you **used** to study hard at school? (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your city / village in the past and today"

....

....

....



UNIT 4

Into the past

Objectives

Reading:
Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about a trip to a museum; a text about ancient objects

Writing:
A description of a historic place; a report about a historic site

Listening:
A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum ; a class debate

Speaking:
Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism

Language:
Past continuous

Life Skills:
Environmental issues; self-management; critical thinking

Values:
Co-existence values; respect

SB pages 34 - 37 WB pages 95

" Key Vocabulary "

arch	قنطرة	amazing	
castle	قلعة	ancient	قديم جداً)
mosque	مسجد	guide	
museum	متحف	view	
pyramid	هرم	awesome	
ruins	أطلال (بقايا)	historic	
stadium	استاد	interesting	
statue	تمثال	touch (ed)	
temple	معبد	protect (ed)	
theatre	مسرح	drop (ped)	/ يرمى

Vocabulary

stone	حجر	walls	/ حوائط / جدران
objects	أشياء	a packed lunch	غذاء جاهزة
the Romans	الرومان	picnic lunch	غذاء للنزهة
Roman city	مدينة رومانية	culture	/ ثقافة
Roman times	العصور الرومانية	rules	
entrance	مدخل	behave (d)	
horse race	سباق خيل	imagine (d)	
hill	تل	drive (n) (d)	بالسيارة / يقود سيارة
a day out	يوم للتنزه	explain (ed)	
muslim	مسلم	pray (ed)	
complete (n)	كامل	walk (n) (ed)	/ يمشى

Historic cities		Historic places	
Cairo, Egypt	القاهرة فى مصر	Elephantine Island, Aswan	نتيلة فى اسوان
Giza, Egypt	الجيزة فى مصر	Abydos, Sohag	أبيدوس فى سوهاج
Leptis Magna, Libya	لبدى العظمى فى ليبيا	The Karnak Temple	الكرنك فى الأقصر
Jerash, Jordan	جرش فى الأردن	The Roman Theatre, Alexandria	الرومانى فى الاسكندرية
Djenne, Mali	جنى فى مالى		
Djemila, Algeria	جميلة فى الجزائر	The Pyramids of Dahshur, Giza	دهشور فى الجيزة
Baalabeck, Lebanon	بعلبك فى لبنان		
Petra	البترا / البتراء فى الأردن		

Words & Meanings

historic	تاريخى	concerning history
awesome	مذهل	amazing
guide	مرشد	a person who can show you round a place
ancient	أثرى (قديم جداً)	very old
view	منظر	what you can see from the top of something
arch	قنطرة	an entrance to another place

Expressions

It is important to	مهم جداً أن
There's much to see.	هناك الكثير لنراه.
get a guide	نستعين بمرشد
It's easy to imagine	من السهل أن تتخيل
It was great fun!	كانت متعة كبيرة!
really good	جيد جداً
recommend a visit	يوصى بزيارة
enjoy our visit	نستمتع بزيارتنا
leave straight away	نغادر على الفور
It's a long drive	إنها رحلة طويلة بالسيارة

Prepositions

on time	فى الوقت المحدد
listen to	يستمع إلى
put ....in	يضع......فى
go in	يدخل
interested in	مهتم بـ
around the world	حول العالم
walk around	يتجول
it dates to	يرجع تاريخه إلى
show..... round	يصطحب فى جولة
go back to	يعود / يرجع إلى
drive on this road	تقود (السيارة) على هذا الطريق

Word Differences

quiet	هادىء	quite	إلى حد كبير
a day out	يوم للتنزه	a day off	يوم إجازة
wall	سور	well	بئر
BCE	قبل الميلاد	AD	ميلادية
temple	معبد	tomb	مقبرة

Words & Opposites

late متأخر / متأخراً	early مبكر / مبكراً	careful حريص	careless مهمل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
show	يعرض	showed	shown

Language Notes

1 • hundred • thousand • million

ن هذه الكلمات لا تجمع إذا جاء بعدها اسم، لكن يجمع الاسم الذى يليها.

ex. He gave me a thousand pounds.
ex. Dinosaurs lived on earth for more than 150 million years.

نها لا تجمع إذا سبقها تعبير عدد مثل (a few)

ex. We need a few hundred dollars.

ن جمعها إذا أتى بعدهم of :

ex. Hundreds of people were at the concert.

2 • recommend • advise

- **recommend + n./ v-ing.** ى بـ - يرشح شيء
  ex. I recommend a visit / visiting to the museum.
- **advise** ح
- **advise (someone) to + inf.** ح (شخص ما) بفعل (شيء ما)
  ex. She advised me to visit the Karnak Temple.



Tapescript SB page (35)

Teacher: I'm sure you're all excited(1) about visiting the pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan(2) our trip properly(3), so I need to talk to you about rules(4).
On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away(5). It's a long drive(6) to Giza from the school. We are going to be away from school for the whole day, so you must bring a packed lunch(7). It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water.
Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history and culture(8) of our country. We must help to protect(9) them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter(10). We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.
So, are there any questions about the trip?

Arabic Meaning

1- متشوق
2- يخطط
3- بشكل سليم
4- قواعد
5- نغادر على الفور
6- رحلة طويلة بالسيارة
7- وجبة غداء جاهزة
8- حضارة
9- يحمى
10- يلقى بالقمامة

Reading

SB page (36)



An amazing day out! *****

I visited Abydos[2] last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins*[2] in the desert. I'm not usually very interested in[3] history, but this place is awesome*[4]!

Maged, Egypt

Get a guide ****

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place so you need a few hours to walk around[5] it. It's also a good idea to get a guide[6] to tell you all about the history.

Leila, Assyut

Go back to Roman times![7] *****

I visited the Roman theatre[8] in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It's easy to imagine[9] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues[10] and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun[11]!

Samir, Giza

Arabic Meaning

١- معبد أبيدوس فى سوهاج
٢- أطلال
٣- مهتم بـ
٤- مذهل
٥- يتجول
٦- مرشد
٧- العصور الرومانية
٨- المسرح الرومانى
٩- يتخيل
١٠- تماثيل
١١- متعة

Say it correctly

*awesome — ينطق المقطع الأول الملون فى هذه الكلمة awe مثل نطق حرف o فى كلمة or

Reading

SB page (37)



The City of Jerash — By Azza

Jerash is a Roman city[1] in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old! When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance[2] to the city. The arch*[3] is very tall. You must buy a ticket[4] before you go in.

The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This is a stadium[5] for Roman horse races[6]. You can watch races there today.

Arabic Meaning

١- مدينة رومانية
٢- مدخل
٣- قنطرة
٤- تذكرة
٥- استاد
٦- سباقات الخيول

Jerash has three Roman theatres(7). The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

This temple(8) is on a hill(9). There is an amazing view(10) of the city from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic(11) places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

مسارح
معبد
تل
منظر مذهل
تاريخي

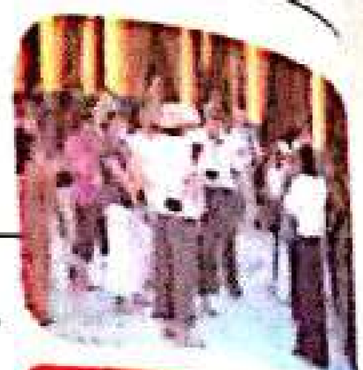
Say it correctly

*arch

ينطق حرف (ch) في هذه الكلمة مثلها في كلمة (watch)

Reading

WB page (95)



It is a long walk(1) to the temple so you must all listen carefully(2). It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it safely(3). However, you mustn't stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run. When we arrive at the temple, you mustn't touch(4) any of the building because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches(5) after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget(6) to write about what you see!

Arabic Meaning

1- تمشية
2- بعناية / بحرص
3- بأمان
4- يلمس
5- وجبات غذاء للنزهة
6- ينسى

Reading

WB page (96)



My trip to Petra

I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to(1) around 3000 BCE(2), so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the view from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be careful(3)! Our guide explained(4) how old the temples are: they are really ancient(5). I really enjoyed our day there and recommend(6) a visit!

Arabic Meaning

1- يعود تاريخها إلى
2- قبل الميلاد
3- حريص
4- شرح
5- أثري (قديم جداً)
6- أوصى بـ

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Petra is a great .... place in Jordan. A lot of tourists visit it.
   a) funny   b) hard   c) historic   d) interested

2. You can watch a sports match at a/an .... WB
   a stadium   b statue   c museum   d entrance
3. The Pyramids are really ....
   a expensive   b careful   c useless   d awesome
4. A/An .... is an entrance to another place. WB
   a pyramid   b arch   c view   d stone
5. A .... shows tourists interesting tourist places.
   a teacher   b keeper   c guide   d statue
6. My new house has a wonderful .... over the sea.
   a ruin   b guide   c arch   d view
7. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the .... temples. SB
   a ancient   b new   c difficult   d careless

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We pray at a.......... . WB
   a mosque   b theatre   c museum   d stadium
2. A/An .... has very strong walls. WB
   a object   b desert   c ticket   d castle
3. The Great Pyramid .... to around 2600 BCE.
   a dates   b takes   c keeps   d lasts
4. A .... is not a complete building. WB
   a stone   b ruin   c house   d hill
5. More than thirty .... people live in my town.
   a thousands'   b thousand's   c thousand   d thousands
6. You might see a .... in a museum. WB
   a statue   b race   c temple   d castle
7. I went to the National .... and watched a nice play.
   a Cinema   b Museum   c Castle   d Theatre
8. The .... has a lot of objects of the Pharaohs.
   a guide   b museum   c club   d view
9. The Karnak .... was built thousands of years ago.
   a Theatre   b Stadium   c Tower   d Temple
10. When we arrived at the museum, a .... was waiting for us.
   a statue   b camel   c guide   d guest

Grammar

Obligation (must / mustn't) التعبير عن الإلزام

1 must + inf.

يستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

ex. You must arrive at school on time.

ex. We must put your rubbish in the bin.

2 mustn't + inf.

يستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي / التحريم (في المضارع).

ex. You mustn't be noisy in class.

ex. You mustn't run near the pool.

السؤال عن الإلزام بالصيغة الآتية.

(كلمة الاستفهام) + must + فاعل + inf......?

ex. A: Must I call before I come to see the doctor?

B: Yes, you must.

Check ✓

Read and correct the underlined words:

1- You must sail in bad weather. It is dangerous. (..........)

2- You mustn't be careful when you do experiments in the laboratory. (..........)

لاحظ الآتى:

١- لا تستخدم (to) قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد must / mustn't

واعلم أن المصدر من (am , is , are) هو (be) ومن (have, has) هو (have)

ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

ex. Travellers must have a passport when they travel abroad.

٢- فى النفى ضع not (n't) مباشرة بعد (must) وليس بعد الفعل.

must not (mustn't) go. ✓

~~must go not~~ ×

Exercises on Lessons (1) & (2)

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All students ---------- follow the school rules.
   a must   b can't   c mustn't   d won't
2. Drivers ---------- stop when the light is red.
   a can't   b have   c mustn't   d must
3. Why ---------- people smoke in hospitals?
   a must   b can   c mustn't   d haven't
4. You ---------- speak loudly. Your dad is asleep.
   a mustn't   b can   c must   d not
5. You ---------- touch any of the building because it is very old. WB
   a must   b can   c haven't   d mustn't
6. You ---------- put your rubbish in the bin. SB
   a must   b has   c mustn't   d isn't
7. You ---------- listen to the teacher. SB
   a can't   b must   c mustn't   d doesn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You <u>must</u> smoke in public transports. (------------)
2. You <u>mustn't</u> buy your ticket before you enter the castle. SB (------------)
3. We must <u>to eat</u> healthy food. (------------)
4. You <u>must</u> run inside the building of the school. SB (------------)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ---------- I take this medicine every day?
   a Must   b Aren't   c Haven't   d Wasn't

2. We .... wash fruits and vegetables before we eat them.

a won't
b are
c mustn't
d must

3. In a museum, you .... touch the objects.

a must
b can
c mustn't
d will

4. You .... be quiet in the library.

a must
b don't
c mustn't
d am

5. What .... I do to enter this museum?

a am
b have
c must
d aren't

6. Girls .... walk in dark streets alone.

a must
b can
c will
d mustn't

7. Cars .... drive on this road so we can walk on it safely.

a must
b doesn't
c mustn't
d isn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We <u>mustn't</u> drink milk every day, it's healthy. (........)

2. Workers <u>must</u> work without safety boots. (........)

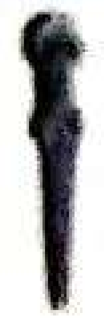
3. You <u>must</u> drink this water; it's dirty. WB (........)

4. What mustn't I <u>to do</u> in class? (........)

"Key Vocabulary"

object	شيء	mirror	مرآة
keep away	يبعد	wood	خشب
clay	صلصال	design (n) (ed)	تصميم – يصمم
insect	حشرة	open (adj) (ed)	مفتوح – يفتح

Museum objects

				
tool أداة	vase* فازة	pot وعاء / قدر	bowl سلطانية	papyrus* ورق البردى
				
mask قناع	figure* تمثال / نموذج	ring خاتم	necklace عقد	coin عملة معدنية

Vocabulary

web page	صفحة على الانترنت	The Museum of Islamic Art	متحف الفن الإسلامي
opening times	أوقات العمل	bathroom	حمام
price	سعر	certainly	بالتأكيد
LE	جنيه مصرى	except	ما عدا
floor	أرضية حجرة / طابق	chemical	مادة كيميائية
square	مربع	mosquito	ناموسة
metal	معدن / معدنى	phone (d)	يتصل تليفونياً
ingredients	مقادير (أكلة)	mix (ed)	يخلط
senet	السينيت (لعبة لوحية مصرية قديمة)	plan (n) (ned)	خطة / يخطط
popular	شعبى / محبوب	paint (n) (ed)	طلاء – يطلى / يلون
doorbell	جرس الباب	wait (ed)	ينتظر
jewellery	مجوهرات		

Words & Meanings

coins	عملات معدنية	pieces of money made of metal
figure	نموذج (لشخص) / تمثال	a model[1] of a person
mask	قناع	something people wear to cover[2] or protect[3] their face
necklace	عُقد	jewellery you wear around your neck[4]
tool	أداة	a piece of equipment[5] you can use to make or repair
vase	فازة	a pot used for holding flowers

Expressions

answer the phone	يرد على الهاتف
take a photo	يلتقط صورة
travel home	يسافر عائداً للوطن
do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلى
make ......look good	يجعل .... يبدو جيد
such as	مثل
of course	بالتأكيد

Prepositions

- look around
- go into
- protect..... from
- keep away insects
- What's on?
- under 12
- on the train
- take off
- make ... with

Word Differences

price	سعر	prize
tools	أدوات (عِدة)	equipment
web page	صفحة على الإنترنت	website
coin	عملة معدنية	banknote
floor	أرضية حجرة / طابق	ground
ingredients	مقادير (أكلة)	recipes
except	ماعدا	expect

Words & Opposites

online	عبر الانترنت	offline	بدون الانترنت	open	مفتوح	closed
huge	ضخم	tiny	دقيق	popular	شعبى / محبوب	unpopular

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
cost	يتكلف / يكلف	cost	cost
find	يجد	found	found
draw	يرسم (بالرصاص / بالجاف)	drew	drawn
hurt	يضر / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
ring	يرن	rang	rung



Language Notes

1 • figure • statue

figure تمثال / نموذج (لشخص)

ex. The ancient Egyptians used to make beautiful gold figures.

statue تمثال شخص أو شىء من معدن أو حجر أو خشب الخ...

ex. The statue of Ramses II was moved to the Grand Museum.

2 • like • look like

What is (somebody / something) like?

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة الاستفهامة للسؤال عن الرأى فى شخص أو شئ.

ex. What is your teacher like? — ما رأيك فى مدرسك؟

- للإجابة عن السؤال نذكر وصف عام للشخص أو الشئ.

- He is kind and clever.

What does (someone / something) look like?

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة الاستفهامية للسؤال عن الصفات الشكلية للشخص أو الشئ.

ex. What does your teacher look like?
- He is tall, with glasses.

3 • made of / made from

• made of

- نستخدم **(be) made of** بمعنى (مصنوع من) عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشئ ويكون من الممكن التعرف عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع المواد الخام) بالصيغة الآتية:

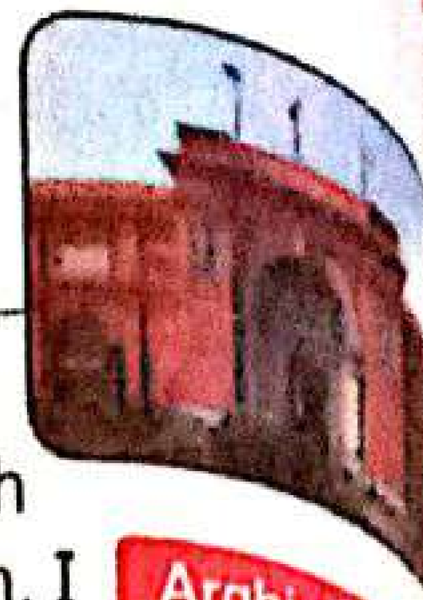
الشئ / الأشياء + is / are + made of + المادة المصنع منها

ex. The ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls which were made of clay.

• made from

- نستخدم **(be) made from** بمعنى (مصنوع من) عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشئ ولا يمكن التعرف عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع مواد ليست خام) بنفس بالصيغة السابقة:

ex. Papyrus is a type of paper which is made from plants.



Tapescript SB page (39)

Boy : Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad!
While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided[2] what we wanted to see first.
While we were looking around[3] the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs[4] on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.
We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we w... travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the muse... We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off[5] my sho...
He gave me my bag.

Arabic Mea...
حف الفن
لإسلامي
قرر
يتفقد (مكان)
تصميمات
يخلع (ملابس)

Say it correctly

*vase	ينطق حرف s فى هذه الكلمة مثل صوت z ولا ينطق حرف e
*papyrus	ينطق حرف y فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة by
*figure	تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة bigger مع اختلاف الصوت الأول

Reading

SB page (40)



Objects from Egypt's past

Objects[1] from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors[2] to help them paint[3] around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away[4] insects[5]. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots[6] and bowls*[7] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay[8], which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing[9] ingredients[10] for bread in bowls, other people got into the bowl and used their feet to mix the ingredients! How do we make bread today?

Arabic Meaning
أشياء
مرآة
يطلي / يلون
يبعد
حشرات
وعاء / قدر
سلطانية
صلصال
يخلط
مقادير (أكلة)

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet[11]. Senet boxes have 30 squares[12]. This box is made of wood[13] and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew[14] the square on the floor. What games are popular[15] in Egypt today?

١١- السينيت (لعبة لوحية مصرية قديمة)
١٢- مربعات
١٣- خشب
١٤- يرسم
١٥- محبوب / شائع

Say it correctly

*bowl

تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة goal مع اختلاف اول حرف فقط

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can use these .... for making a chair.
   a) squares b) tools c) ingredients d) insects
2. There are more than 2,000 .... in the museum. WB
   a) objects b) subjects c) phones d) prices
3. My mum put a .... of flowers on the table.
   a) pan b) bowl c) coin d) vase
4. Can you tell me the .... of the ticket, please? SB
   a) prize b) coin c) price d) object
5. Ancient Egyptians made .... with clay from the Nile River. SB
   a) pots b) insects c) papyrus d) magazines
6. The waiter put a .... of soup in front of each of us.
   a) vase b) design c) plan d) bowl
7. Ancient Egyptians used .... to help them paint around their eyes. SB
   a) chairs b) mirrors c) wood d) floors

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists learnt the ancient Egyptian language from their ....

   a mirrors b ingredients c papyrus d children

2. Ola has a gold .... on her finger.

   a ring b necklace c shoes d hat

3. A .... has four corners.

   a tool b bowl c circle d square

4. The .... she wears around her neck is very expensive.

   a sock b necklace c ring d skirt

5. This chemical helps to keep .... mosquitoes.

   a in b over c about d away

6. You can see the .... of Tutankhamun in the Egyptian Museum.

   a price b chemical c mask d page

7. .... are pieces of money made of metal.

   a Coins b Pots c Bowls d Figures

8. The children like making shapes made of ....

   a water b clay c papyrus d paint

9. The black and white .... around this window are beautiful.

   a pages b webs c prices d designs

10. A .... is a model of a person.

    a figure b design c bowl d vase

Grammar

The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ was	+ v-ing
We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ were	+ v-ing

Affirmative الاثبات

فاعل + was / were + V.ing

ex. I was reading all morning.

ex. They were travelling for a long time.

Negative النفي

فاعل + wasn't / weren't + V.ing

ex. They weren't doing anything at that time.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) Was / Were + subject + V-ing......?

ex. Were you studying when your mother called you?

ex. What was Ali doing when you saw him?

Passive المبني للمجهول

نائب فاعل + was / were + being + p.p.

ex. The food was being cooked when I came.

ex. The rooms were being cleaned when the lights went out.

Usage الاستخدام

١- يُستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حَدَث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

- I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع اثناءه حدث آخر قصير فيكون الحدث الطويل في الماضي المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثناءه في الماضي البسيط:

- While I was reading a story, the telephone rang.

٣- للتعبير عن فكرة الحدث الطويل المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع اثناءه أو قطعه في الماضي نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as / When → **Past continuous** ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل) + **Past simple** ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير)

- As / When we were walking into the museum, we saw some huge statues.

When → **Past simple** ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير) + **Past continuous** ماضٍ مستمر (حدث مستمر)

- When Mona fell asleep, she was watching TV.

٣- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي – وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As Just as / When → **Past continuous** ماضٍ مستمر (حدث مستمر) + **Past continuous** ماضٍ مستمر (حدث مستمر)

- While I was having lunch, my sister was watching TV.

During أثناء + **n**

٤- تأتى During مكان While ولكن يأتى بعدها الإسم:

- During the night, it rained heavily.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1. While I .... about the museum, my mother brought me some juice.
   a read b were reading c was reading d is reading
2. It .... to rain when I was going to the club.
   a was starting b started c start d starts
3. While Noura was sewing her dress, her sister .... at her.
   a was looking b looked c is looking d looks

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While we .... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.
   a waited b are waiting c wait d were waiting

2. .... Tarek was crossing the street, he had an accident.
   a As   b Because   c Where   d During
3. While I was waiting for lunch, mum .... in the kitchen.
   a cooks   b was cooking   c cooked   d is cooking
4. As we .... home, Amir phoned me. SB
   a are travelling   b travelled   c travelling   d were travelling
5. .... my father arrived home, we were preparing for the party.
   a Where   b During   c When   d On
6. When we .... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park. WB
   a sat   b was sitting   c sit   d to sit
7. As my parents .... the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first. SB
   a are buying   b bought   c buy   d were buying

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Nada was playing **while** her mother called her. (..........)
2. As the thief **escaped**, a policeman caught him. (..........)
3. While we **shopped** in the market, we lost some money. (..........)
4. While I **walked** around the temple, I hurt my feet. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The men .... when it rained heavily.
   a were working   b work   c are working   d will work
2. As the teacher was talking , I .... a question. SB
   a ask   b asked   c am asking   d were asking
3. While I was reading my book, the phone .... SB
   a rang   b is ringing   c rings   d will ring
4. While Mona was playing tennis, she .... her arm. WB
   a is hurting   b was hurting   c hurts   d hurt
5. While the teacher was marking the homework, we .... quietly.
   a was sitting   b sitting   c were sitting   d are sitting

6. As Karim .... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.

a took b was taking c takes d is taking

7. I .... my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.

a was putting b will put c put d am putting

8. We .... on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station.

a are travelling b travelling c travel d were travelling

9. .... I finished cooking, my sister Hana was setting the table.

a When b As c While d During

10. When we .... around the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs on them.

a looking b are looking c will look d were looking

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. As I was walking to school, it **start** to rain. SB (..........)
2. Jana **listened** to a song when the lights went out. (..........)
3. Tamer bought a ticket **when** I was waiting for him. (..........)
4. As Mr Badr was walking to work, he **was seeing** an old friend. (..........)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"An object in your home"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-43 WB pages 99-101

"Key Vocabulary"

tourism	السياحة	holiday companies	شركات تنظيم الإجازات
tourist	سائح	maybe	ربما
company	شركة	damage (d)	يتلف
historic places	أماكن تاريخية	agree (d)	يوافق
pollution	التلوث	weigh (ed)	يزن
environment	البيئة		

Vocabulary

area	منطقة	debate	مناظرة
local people	السكان المحلين	the British	البريطانيون
report	تقرير	busy	مزدحم
Pharaoh Thutmose III	الفرعون تحتمس الثالث	war	حرب
across	عَبْر	storm	عاصفة
lake	بحيرة	customer	زبون
ruler	حاكم	behave (d)	يتصرف
oil	بترول	enter (ed)	يدخل
earthquake	زلزال	follow (ed)	يتبع
Tourist places		**Countries**	
Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا	Senegal	السنغال
the River Gambia	نهر جامبيا	Gambia	جامبيا
the River Thames	نهر التايمز	Britain	بريطانيا
Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية بسينيجامبيا (السنغال)	the United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة

Expressions

bring money to	يجلب المال لـ
drop rubbish	يلقي بالقمامة
behave well	يتصرف بشكل لائق
Let me know	دعني أعرف
give work to	يوفر العمل لـ
win a war	يكسب حرباً
20 metres high	على ارتفاع ٢٠ متراً
research information	يبحث عن معلومات
make more pollution	يسبب مزيد من التلوث
follow the sign	يتبع اللافتة

Prepositions

in other ways	
(good / bad) for	
pity for	
at the moment	في الوقت الحالي / ...
walk up	
work for	
report on	
think of	

Word Differences

local	محلي	global	
across	عبر	cross	
damage	يتلف	injure	
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	decade	(... أعوام)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
bring	يجلب / يحضر	brought	brought
build	يبني	built	built
sink	يغرق (الأشياء)	sank	sunk

Language Notes

• maybe • may be

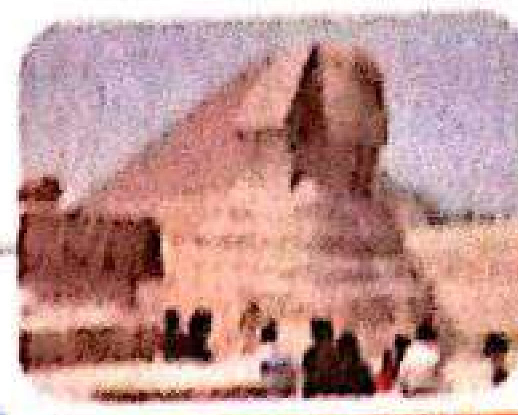
• maybe = perhaps (... ظرف غالباً ما يأتي في أول الجملة)

ex. Maybe it will be sunny tomorrow.

• may be ... ممكن أن يكون

... يتبعه (مصدر الفعل .inf)

ex. It may be sunny tomorrow.



Tapescript SB page (41)

Amira: What do you think, Hana? Is tourism[1] good for historic places[2]?

Hana : Yes, I think it is. Tourists[3] bring money to an area[4]. This helps the local people[5].

Amira : I don't think so. A lot of the money goes to big companies[6], not local people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment[7] and the local people.

Amira : I don't agree that tourisms help the environment. Tourists drop rubbish[8] and damage[9] places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

Hana : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well[10]. They know it's important to protect historic places.

Arabic Meaning

١- السياحة
٢- الأماكن التاريخية
٣- السائحون
٤- منطقة
٥- السكان المحليون
٦- شركات
٧- البيئة
٨- يلقي بالقمامة
٩- يتلف
١٠- يتصرف بشكل لائق

Reading

SB page (42)



Where are the stone circles?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

Why are the stone circles important?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are the stone circles?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,700 years.

Can tourists visit them?

- Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage them. Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones.

Reading



WB page (99)

While we were visiting the beach[1] last month, we decided[2] it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will give work to a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. That is when the hotel will be busy[3]. There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake[4]. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. Let me know what you think of our plan[5].

Arabic Meaning

١- شاطئ
٢- قررنا
٣- مزدحم
٤- بحيرة
٥- خطة

Reading



WB page (100)

Cleopatra's Needle[1]

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames[2] in London, England.

How old is it?

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III[3] and it is about 3,500 years old.

Why is it in this country?

The ruler[4] of Egypt, Muhammad Ali, gave it to Britain[5] in 1819 after the British[6] won a war[7].

How big is it?

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs*[8] about 200,000 kilograms.

How did it get to this country?

The British made a special ship[9] for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank[10] in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

Arabic Meaning

١- مسلة
٢- نهر التايمز
٣- الفرعون تحتمس الثالث
٤- حاكم
٥- بريطانيا
٦- البريطانيون
٧- حرب
٨- تزن
٩- سفينة خاصة
١٠- غرقت

Say it correctly

*weigh — تنطق هذه الكلمة تماماً مثل نطق كلمة way

Exercises on Lessons (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... brings a lot of money to our country.
   a) Pollution b) Damage c) War d) Tourism
2. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more .... SB
   a) pollution b) tourism c) holiday d) history
3. Don't play football here or you might .... that car. WB
   a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) repair
4. It is important to protect all parts of the .... SB
   a) guide b) environment c) century d) pollution
5. I love going to .... places such as museums and ancient ruins. WB
   a) historic b) scary c) cultured d) historian
6. We must encourage .... from all over the world to visit Egypt.
   a) thieves b) museums c) ruins d) tourists
7. Ali's uncle works for a big oil .... in the United Arab Emirates. WB
   a) work b) company c) job d) environment

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thutmose III is a great ....
   a) tourist b) pharaoh c) guide d) place
2. I don't like shopping at very .... markets.
   a) busy b) high c) clear d) heavy
3. Is fast food good .... our health?
   a) from b) to c) on d) for
4. We shouldn't .... rubbish on the beaches.
   a) draw b) drop c) collect d) clean

5. .... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.

a Maybe
b May
c Might
d Might be

6. A good student .... well at school.

a follows
b keeps
c behaves
d agrees

7. Cleopatra's Needle .... about 200,000 kilograms.

a weighs
b sews
c damages
d behaves

8. Building new factories .... work to many young people.

a takes
b weighs
c gives
d protect

9. We all .... that education is very important for everyone.

a agree
b greet
c disagree
d give

10. Tourists damage historic places .... other ways, like sitting on anc ruins.

a on
b at
c in
d for



Language Functions

1 Asking for information on the telephone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

نموذج لمحادثة لطلب معلومات عبر الهاتف:

A: How can I help you? ف استطيع أن أساعدك؟

B: Hello, can you tell me ...? — رحبا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرنى.......؟

A: Certainly. / Of course. It's....... . — لتأكيد / بالطبع. إنه......... .

B: I'd like to know what time .... — د أن أعرف فى أى وقت......... .

A: Can I buy ....? — ل يمكن أن أشترى.........؟

B: Thank you for your help. — شكرك على مساعدتك.

2 Responding to an opinion

الرد على الرأى

للرد على رأى نقول:

- I don't agree. — لا أوافق.
- I don't think so. — لا أعتقد ذلك.
- I think it is.......... — أعتقد أنه ....
- I see what you mean. — أفهم ما تعنى.
- Maybe, ... — ربما، ....

Exercises on Language Functions

▸ Complete the following dialogue:

Ticket office : Good morning. City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is ① ....?

Ticket office : Certainly. We open every day except Friday. We close then.

Customer : I'd like to know how ② .... a ticket, please.

Ticket office : 150 pounds.

Customer : Can I ③ .... the tickets of the museum?

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them ④ ....

Customer : Thank you for your help.

Ticket office : You are ⑤ ....

Customer : Goodbye.

Excel Yourself

1 ▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What .... to get this job, Ahmed?

a) must do I b) do I must c) must I do d) I must do

2- .... walking along the street, I met Ali.

a) Where b) What c) When d) While

3- Just .... they were watching the film, the doorbell rang.

a) as b) if c) like d) on

2 ▸ Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What happen while you were driving to your work yesterday? (..................)

2. You shouldn't enter the museum with a camera. It's forbidden. (..................)

Unit 4 Review

Key Vocabulary Review

arch	قنطرة	interesting	شيق	ring	خاتم
castle	قلعة	object	شيء	necklace	عُقد
mosque	مسجد	keep away	يبعد	coin	عملة معدنية
museum	متحف	clay	صلصال	tourism	السياحة
pyramid	هرم	insect	حشرة	tourist	سائح
ruins	أطلال (بقايا)	wood	خشب	historic places	أماكن تاريخية
stadium	استاد	mirror	مرآة	pollution	التلوث
statue	تمثال	company	شركة	environment	البيئة
temple	معبد	square	مربع	holiday companies	شركات تنظيم الإجازات
theatre	مسرح	tool	أداة	maybe	ربما
amazing	مذهل	vase	فازة	damage (d)	يتلف
ancient	أثرى (قديم جداً)	pot	وعاء / قدر	agree (d)	يوافق
guide	مرشد	bowl	سلطانية	weigh (ed)	يزن
view	منظر	papyrus	ورق البردى	design (n) (ed)	تصميم – يصمم
awesome	مذهل	mask	قناع	open (adj) (ed)	مفتوح – يفتح
historic	تاريخى	figure	تمثال / نموذج (لشخص)	drop (ped)	يلقى / يرمى

Grammar Review

1 must / mustn't

١. تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (فى المضارع).

ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

٢. تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهى / التحريم (فى المضارع).

ex. You mustn't come to school late.

2 The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was + v-ing	was not + v-ing	(كلمة الاستفهام) + was + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were + v-ing	were not + v-ing	(كلمة الاستفهام) + were + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords كلمات دالة

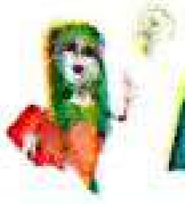
when / while / as

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن حدث استمر فى وقت محدد فى الماضى / حدث استمر فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

ex. I was reading a book when someone phoned me.

ex. Hani wasn't sleeping when I visited him.



Language Functions Review

1 Asking for information on the telephone طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

A: How can I help you?

B: Hello, can you tell me ...?

A: Certainly. / Of course. It's....... .

B: I'd like to know what time ....

A: Can I buy ....?

B: Thank you for your help.

2 Responding to an opinion الرد على الرأى

- I don't agree.
- I don't think so.
- I think it is..........
- I see what you mean.
- Maybe, ...

General Exercises on Unit 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Guide : Jerash has three Roman theatres. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre.

Tourist : How ❶ .... people can sit in the theatre?

Guide : Five thousand people can sit there.

Tourist : ❷ .... else are there in Jerash?

Guide : There is a temple on a hill, too.

Tourist : What can you see from the temple?

Guide : There is an amazing ❸ .... of the city from here.

Tourist : I think it is important to learn about ❹ .... places around the world.

Guide : Yes, of ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Businessmen travel a lot .... the world.
   a) above b) under c) around d) about
2. Modern technology is ....
   a) interested b) useless c) careful d) amazing
3. .... means very old. WB
   a) Modern b) Ancient c) Public d) Awesome
4. I .... my homework when my sister called me. WB
   a) was doing b) will do c) did d) am doing
5. There's .... to see in old Cairo.
   a) lot b) any c) that d) much
6. Playing computer games is great .... for children.
   a) fun b) view c) web d) report
7. You .... use your mobile while you are driving.
   a) must b) aren't c) mustn't d) haven't
8. We have a .... in the bathroom. SB
   a) bed b) ruin c) temple d) mirror
9. A .... is a pot used for holding flowers. WB
   a) bowl b) box c) vase d) pan
10. Can you .... a book to read at the weekend, Tarek?
    a) recommend b) advise c) say d) tell
11. A .... is a person who can show you round a place. WB
    a) tourist b) professor c) manager d) guide
12. You .... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle. SB
    a) must b) are c) have d) shall
13. A .... is what you can see from the top of something. WB
    a) pyramid b) view c) review d) ruler
14. .... Nadia was writing a message to Amany, her phone broke down.
    a) After b) On c) Just as d) If
15. The people were running quickly from the park because it .... to rain. WB
    a) starts b) is starting c) start d) started

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You <u>must</u> touch the stones of the Pyramids. SB (.............)
2. It's a "No Smoking" area. You <u>must</u> smoke here. (.............)

3. You **must** climb on the walls: it's dangerous! SB (..........
4. While I was doing my homework, I **drop** my pencil. SB (..........
5. When the guide **was arriving** at the museum, we were waiting outside. (..........

5 ➤ **Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:** (Writing skills

"What do you think we can do to protect the environment"

....

....

....

....

....

TEST 5 UNIT 4

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 ➤ **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important ....
   a statue   b stone   c castle   d temple
2. Cleopatra's Needle has beautiful .... on it.
   a paintings   b arches   c colours   d designs
3. You can see it .... the River Thames
   a behind   b in front of   c under   d next to
4. The River Thames is in ....
   a Paris   b Amsterdam   c London   d Tokyo

B Language Functions

2 ➤ **Complete the following dialogue:**

Azza: What are you reading?

Adel: I'm reading a book about Ancient Egypt.

Azza: Could you tell me some information about the ❶.................... Egyptians

Adel: Sure. In Ancient Egypt, many people ❷.................... mirrors help them paint around their eyes.

Azza: Why did they paint ❸.................... their eyes?

Adel: To make them look good and protect their eyes from the sun.

Azza: What other things did people use in Ancient Egypt?

Adel: They used pots and bowls for making ❹ ....

Azza: How did people make these ❺ ....?

Adel: These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile.

C Reading Comprehension

3 ➤ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Mr Adel and his wife went on holiday to Hurghada. They stayed in a small hotel. One day, Mr Adel went for a long walk. He found a cat! It was lost! It followed Mr Adel to the hotel. His wife liked the cat and she gave it some food. It ate the food very quickly. It sat down outside their front door.

At 10 p.m., it was cold, so Mr Adel's wife let the cat inside. It sat beside her on the sofa. They gave her the name Pussy. Pussy stayed in the hotel with them. Six days later, **it** was time to go home. Now, Pussy lives with them, she sits on the wife's knee in the evenings. They love Pussy and Pussy loves them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where did Mr Adel and his wife stay?

....

2- When did Mr Adel find the cat?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ....

a home b sofa c cat d food

4- Mr Adel's wife is ....

a kind b bad c unkind d lost

5- When it was cold, the cat was............the room.

a inside b in c outside d under

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These bowls are made of .... WB

a clay b flour c air d oil

2. The guide showed us .... the Temple of Luxor.

a behind b round c during d without

3. You .... eat inside the castle.

a were b mustn't c have d must

4. Bees and ants are important ....

a birds b planes c insects d guides

5. Smoking can damage your health. You .... stop it.

a did b aren't c can't d must

6. A .... is something people wear to cover or protect their face.

a mask b glove c helmet d sock

7. While Adel .... the vase, he dropped it and it broke.

a held b was holding c is holding d holds

8. After the earthquake, three buildings became ....

a arches b views c areas d ruins

9. What .... I do when I visit a historic place?

a must b have c was d am

10. Most of the people .... when the earthquake started.

a sleep b were sleeping c slept d will sleep

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We were all laughing when he **finishes** that funny story. WB (..........

2. All people **mustn't** wear a mask to avoid the dangerous disease. (..........

3. While I **am playing** on the computer, I found out an interesting fact. (..........

4. Children **must** play with matches. (..........

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills فى جزء

"A description of a historic place you visited"

....

....

....

....

....

....



UNIT 5

Helping you, helping me

Objectives

Reading:

An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; *A Little Princess*; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project

Writing:

A blog post

Listening:

Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions

Speaking:

A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions

Language:

relative pronouns who, which, that, where

Life skills:

Participation; Collaboration: Sharing

"Key Vocabulary"

random	عشوائى	lift	صعد (أسانسير)
stranger (s)	غريب (غرباء)	messy	وضوى (غير منظم)
fantastic	رائع	smile (n) (d)	تسامة/يبتسم
kindness	طيبة/عطف		
Jobs in the house			
cook (ed)	يطهو/يطبخ	tidy up (ied)	رتب
look after (ed)	يعتنى بـ	wash up (ed)	يغسل الاوانى
put away the clothes	يضع الملابس فى مكانها المعتاد	take out the rubbish	يخرج القمامة

Vocabulary

lucky	محظوظ	wheelchair	رسى متحرك
often things	أشياء كثيرة	footballer	عب كرة قدم
bin	سلة المهملات	surprised	ندهش
stairs	سلالم	sort	وع
schoolbag	حقيبة المدرسة	distance	سافة
apartment	شقة	further	بعد
address	عنوان (مكان)	snack	جبة خفيفة
shopkeeper	صاحب متجر(محل)	alone	مفرده
acts	أفعال	practise (d)	مارس
meal	وجبة	carry (ied)	حمل
model	نموذج		

Words & Meanings

kindness	طيبة/عطف	when you do things to help others and show you care[1] about them
strangers	غرباء	people you don't know
fantastic	رائع	extremely[2] good; excellent[3]
random	عشوائى	happening without a plan
a smile	ابتسامة	the shape[4] of your mouth that shows you are happy
messy	فوضوى	very untidy[5]
put away	يضع الشىء فى مكانه المعتاد	put something in the place where you usually keep it when you are not using it

Arabic Meanings
1- يهتم
2- جدا
3- ممتاز
4- شكل
5- غير مرتب

Expressions

do the cooking	تطهو / تطبخ
check his health	يطمئن على صحته
take the lift	يستقل المصعد
take the bus	يركب الاتوبيس
acts of kindness	أفعال خير
give back	يُعيد
once a week	مرة فى الأسبوع
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
make the bed	يرتب السرير
for no reason	بدون سبب

Prepositions

get ready for	يستعد لـ
for example	على سبيل المثال
on the floor	على الارضية
get on	يصعد على
on a boat	على قارب
kind to	طيب مع
care about	يهتم بشأن
walk into	يدخل مكان
run after	يطارد

Word Differences

cloth	قماش	clothes	ملابس
floor	ارضية الحجرة	flour	دقيق
lift	مصعد	left	يسار
address	عنوان مكان	dress	فستان
a run (n)	جولة جرى	run (v)	يجرى
alone	بمفرده	lonely	وحيد

Words & Opposites

full	ملئ	empty	فارغ	borrow	يستلف/يقترض	lend	يسلف/يقرض
far	بعيد	near	قريب	messy	فوضوى	tidy	مرتب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
put away	يضع الشىء فى مكانه	put away	put away
take out	يُخرج	took out	taken out
get ready	يستعّد	got ready	got ready
make	يصنع	made	made
write down	يدوّن	wrote down	written down



Language Notes

1 • get ready • get on • get up

• **get ready**

ex. He trained well to get ready for the match.

• **get on**

ex. The old man got on the bus and took my seat.

• **get up**

ex. I get up at seven o'clock every day.

يستقل (مركبة)

2 • spend

• **spend + time + (V- ing)**

ex. Seif spent three hours playing computer games.

وقتًا فى

3 • on time • in time

• **on time**

ex. I always arrive at school on time.

• **in time**

ex. We arrived at the cinema in time. The movie was about to start.

الوقت المحدد

الوقت المناسب

Tapescript SB Page (45)

Hala : I'm Hala. I have to make my bed(1) every day and to tidy up bedroom(2) once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy(3) I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away my clothes(4).

Munir : My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I take turns(5) to wash up(6) after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking(7). I love making koushari.

Adam : I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out our rubbish(8). I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins(9) are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment(10) is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift(11). The bins are heavy when they are full!

Arabic Meaning

١-أرتب فراشى
٢-أرتب حجرة نومى
٣-فوضوى (غير منظم)
٤-اضع ملابسى فى مكانها
٥-أتبادل الأدوار
٦-أغسل الأوانى
٧-الطهى
٨-أخرج القمامة
٩-سلة المهملات
١٠-شقة
١١-مصعد

Nader : I sometimes have to look after my brother[12] after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack[13] to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready[14] for school and I make sure he has the right books.

١٢- أعتني بأخي
١٣- وجبة خفيفة
١٤- يجهز حقيبته

Tapescript SB Page (46)

Aya : The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends[1] with her.

Samir : A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after[2] him and give the bag back[3] to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.

Aya : The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

Samir : She shouldn't carry[4] those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Arabic Meaning

١- يكونوا صداقات
٢- يطارد
٣- يعيد الحقيبة
٤- يحمل

Reading

SB page (47)



Random Acts of Kindness

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: Practise[1] random acts[2] of kindness[3]. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason[4]. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers[5]: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile[6] on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic[7] idea?

Arabic Meaning

١- يمارس
٢- أفعال عشوائية
٣- عطف
٤- مبرر
٥- غرباء
٦- ابتسامة
٧- رائعة

Reading

WB page (102)

We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses[1] and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair[2], so she doesn't have to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving[3], but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally[4], if you see a dolphin[5], you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

Arabic Meaning

١- نظارة شمسية
٢- كرسي متحرك
٣- يتحرك
٤- أخيرا
٥- دولفين

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I help to look .... my little sister when my parents are busy.
   a after b up c for d to
2. The bin is full. Please can you take .... the rubbish?
   a up b down c out d off
3. I read .... pages from the book and then I decided to buy it.
   a friendly b moving c random d boring
4. Karim is a happy person and always has a .... on his face.
   a smile b pencil case c knife d tablet
5. She can't walk so she uses a ....
   a sofa b wheelchair c toy d lamp
6. He didn't come to school yesterday .... no reason.
   a of b from c for d to
7. Hala is a .... person and there are often things on her bed.
   a tidy b friendly c neat d messy

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is .... dinner in the kitchen.
   a tidying b cleaning c moving d cooking
2. Hala is very .... and leaves her toys all over the floor. WB
   a tidy b dirty c missed d messy
3. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all .... WB
   a up b away c off d din
4. Don't drop rubbish on the ground. Put it in the ....
   a pen b bowl c bin d plate
5. They gave the footballer a .... test to check his health. WB
   a random b handsome c useless d far
6. We all remember my grandfather's .... : he always helped us when we were children. WB
   a careless b weakness c kindness d sadness
7. I love my friend. He always meets me with a pretty ....
   a mile b smile c schoolbag d bin
8. This book is .... You should read it! WB
   a boring b useless c fantastic d bad
9. Amal finds it very easy to .... friends because she is so friendly. WB
   a do b give c make d hate
10. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a .... walked into his shop. WB
    a relative b friend c teacher d stranger

Grammar

Obligation and lack of obligation
الإلزام وعدم الإلزام

1 have to / don't have to, has to / doesn't have to

Obligation الإلزام

للتعبير عن الإلزام / الضرورة فى المضارع (أى قواعد معينة من الضرورى أن نتبعها ولا خيار أمامنا) نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have to
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has to
} + inf. مصدر الفعل يضطر إلى ..

ex. I have to wear a school uniform.

ex. He has to go to school on time.

Lack of obligation عدم الإلزام

للتعبير عن عدم الإلزام فى المضارع (أشياء ليس من الضرورى أن نفعلها) نستخدم:

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + don't have to
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't have to
} + inf. مصدر الفعل ليس من الضرورى أن..

ex. We don't have to go to school on Saturdays.

ex. My mother doesn't have to go to work today because it's a holiday.

لعمل سؤال بمعنى (هل ..؟) عن الإلزام/ الضرورة فى المضارع نستخدم:

Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + have to + inf...?
- **Yes, فاعل + do.** (إثبات) - **No, فاعل + don't.** (نفى)

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + have to + inf...?
- **Yes, فاعل + does.** (إثبات) - **No, فاعل + doesn't.** (نفى)

ex. Do you have to get up at seven o'clock?
Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

ex. Does she have to eat breakfast?
Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

لعمل سؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to + inf...?

ex. When do we have to finish our homework?

ex. Why does she have to go now?

2 should / shouldn't (for advice)

Form التكوين

... مصدر الفعل .inf + should + اسم جمع / مفرد / كل الضمائر

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) للنصيحة كما يلى:

Affirmative إثبات

• للنصيحة بفعل شىء نستخدم (should)

ex. We should see that film. It's fantastic.

Negative النفى

• للنصيحة بعدم فعل شىء نستخدم should not (shouldn't)

ex. You shouldn't eat unhealthy snacks.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf. ....?

ex. Should I write my name on my paper?
- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + should + فاعل + inf. ...?

ex. A: When should I start to revise for the exam?
B: Three days before the exam.

لاحظ الآتى:

• لا تستخدم (to) قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد should / shouldn't
واعلم أن المصدر من (am, is, are, was, were) هو (be) ومن (has, have) هو (have)

ex. You should be helpful.

• فى النفى ضع not (n't) مباشرة بعد should وليس بعد الفعل.

should not (shouldn't) go ✓. ~~should go not~~ ✗.

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a holiday today. We .... to go to school.
   a don't have b have c has d doesn't have
2. I .... walk to school. I take the bus.
   a have to b has to c doesn't have to d don't have to
3. You .... drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
   a should b can't c doesn't have to d shouldn't
4. You .... eat fruit and vegetables. They're healthy.
   a shouldn't b should to c shouldn't to d should
5. My mother is sick. I .... cook dinner.
   a has to b don't have to c have to d doesn't have to
6. My father .... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
   a have to b has to c don't have to d doesn't have
7. You .... buy your friend a present on his/her birthday.
   a should b shouldn't c should to d aren't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I **have** to pay for the toy. It's free. (..........)
2. I feel ill. I **shouldn't** see a doctor. (..........)
3. At school, I **don't have** to arrive on time. WB (..........)
4. You **should** eat many sweets. They are not healthy. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you get on the bus, you .... buy a ticket. SB
   a don't have to b has to c have to d doesn't have to
2. You .... tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson. SB
   a can't b should c shouldn't d has to
3. You .... be careful when you cross the road.
   a shouldn't b has to c don't have to d have to
4. You .... watch too much TV.
   a shouldn't b have to c should d has to
5. You .... shout in the classroom.
   a should b has to c shouldn't d doesn't have to
6. You .... do sports to keep fit.
   a shouldn't b doesn't have to c should d don't have to
7. You .... always tell the truth.
   a don't have to b shouldn't c has to d should
8. We .... play with matches.
   a should b have to c shouldn't d has to
9. At the weekends, I .... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. SB
   a doesn't have to b don't have to c have to d has to
10. We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you ....wear sunglasses and a hat. WB
    a don't have to b have to c shouldn't d can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Should I **to read** this book? (............)
2. You **shouldn't** always be polite. (............)
3. He can't walk. He **doesn't have to** use a wheelchair. (............)
4. The bus is full. I **don't have to** take a taxi. (............)

"Key Vocabulary"

boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	beggar	متسول
disabled	معاق	feed (fed) (fed)	يطعم
cruel	قاسى	donate (d)	يتبرع
servant	خادم/خادمة	behave (d)	يتصرف/يسلك
community	مجتمع محلى (صغير)	pick up (ed)	يلتقط
princess	أميرة		

Vocabulary

maths exam	امتحان فى الرياضيات	headteacher	ناظر المدرسة
trainer	حذاء رياضى	real	حقيقى
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة	baker / baker's	خباز / مخبز
volunteer	متطوع	generous	كريم
present	هدية	strange	غريب
local beach	شاطىء محلى	sports person	شخص رياضى
plastic	بلاستيك / بلاستيكى	directions	اتجاهات
special	خاص / مميز	die (d)	يموت
sick	مريض	call (ed)	يسمى / ينادى
delicious	لذيذ		

Words & Meanings

cruel	قاسى	not kind
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	a school where the students live all the time
behave	يتصرف/يسلك	act or do something in a certain way(1)
beggar	متسول	a poor person who asks others for money, etc. ......
servant	خادم	a person who works in a house, cooking(2), cleaning, etc.
community	مجتمع محلى	a small area and the people who live in it
pick up	يلتقط	lift someone or something
disabled	معاق	cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
donate	يتبرع	give something useful to a person or charity that needs help
feed	يُطعم	give food to a person or animal
princess	أميرة	the daughter of a king or queen

Arabic Meaning
١- طريقة معينة
٢- الطبخ

Expressions

pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان
work as	يعمل كـ
such as	مثل
work hard	يعمل بجد
get lost	يضل الطريق
behave well	يتصرف بشكل لائق
behave like a real princess	تتصرف كأميرة حقيقية

Prepositions

kind to	طيب مع
polite to	مؤدب مع
cruel to	قاسى مع
recommend.... to	يوصى بـــ.......
terrible to	فظيع مع
move to	ينتقل الى (يعزل)
difficult for	صعب على
ask for	يطلب
surprise about	مندهش من

Word Differences

beggar	متسول	bigger	أكبر
lift	مصعد	left	يسار
trainers	حذاء رياضى	trainer	مدرب

Words & Opposites

rich	غنى	poor	فقير	famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
kind	طيب	cruel	قاسى	local	محلى	global	عالمى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
find	يجد	found	found
give	يعطى	gave	given



Language Notes

1 • buy

- **buy + someone + something** — يشترى شئ لشخص

ex. I bought my mother a present.

- **buy + something for + someone** — يشترى شئ لشخص

ex. My father bought a toy for me.

2 • call / (be) called

• **call (ed - ed)** ى / يتصل تليفونيا

ex. I called the waiter and ordered lunch.

ex. I called the police after the accident.

• **(be) called**

ex. This boy is called Ahmed.

يمكن أن تأتى called بدون verb to be وهنا تكون صفة:

ex. A girl called Fatma got a prize.

3 • like • would ('d) like

• **like + n / to + inf / v.ing**

ex. I like football matches / watching football matches.

• **would ('d) like + inf / n = want to + inf / n**

ex. I would like tea, please.

Reading

SB page (49)







I work as a volunteer(1) for a charity which helps to clean our local(2) beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up(3) the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Samir

It is good to help people in the community(4). I visit a home for old people who are disabled(5) so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special(6) person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.

Fatma.

I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick(7) and cannot work any more. People donate(8) money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed(9) the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite(10) animal.

Ahmed.

Arabic Meaning

١- متطوع
٢- محلى
٣- تلتقط
٤- مجتمع محلى (صغير)
٥- معاقين
٦- من نوع خاص
٧- مريض
٨- يتبرع
٩- يُطعم
١٠- مفضل

Reading

SB page (50)



A Little Princess

by Frances Hodgson Burnett

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school[1] calls her "a little princess[2]" because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher[3], Miss Minchin, starts being cruel[4] to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant[5]. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave[6] like a real[7] princess, so she is always kind and polite[8] to everyone.

One day, Sara finds some money. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out , she sees a beggar[9] and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold[10] and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous[11] like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange[12]. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.

Arabic Meaning

١- مدرسة داخلية
٢- أميرة
٣- ناظر المدرسة
٤- قاسى
٥- خادمة
٦- تتصرف
٧- حقيقي
٨- مهذب
٩- متسول
١٠- تشعر بالبرد
١١- كريم
١٢- غريبة

Reading

WB page (105)



I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop. she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!

Exercises on Lessons ③ & ④

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a small area and the people who live in it. WB
   a community b country c team d communication
2. He is .... He cannot use part of his body in the way most people can.
   a healthy b well c disabled d cruel

3. To .... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help

a spend b donate c pick up d call

4. If someone is .... to you, they are terrible to you.

a kind b nice c good d cruel

5. The charity saves money by using ....

a volunteers b officers c beggars d strangers

6. We cleaned the playground and .... up rubbish.

a forgot b picked c pushed d trained

7. When I was young I went to a .... school.

a boarding b aboard c broad d pride

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She can't walk. She goes to a school for .... people.

a disabled b healthy c fine d kind

2. The .... kid hit the little dog with a stone.

a kind b cruel c nice d clever

3. I .... money and clothes to a charity that helps poor people.

a travel b buy c donate d wore

4. A .... lives in a big palace.

a beggar b farmer c poor man d princess

5. My grandparents used to have a/an .... who helped them with the housework.

a actor b servant c doctor d engineer

6. She is polite so she .... well at school.

a shouts b behaves c lies d fights

7. A .... always asks people for food and money.

a princess b servant c beggar d volunteer

8. I have a pet cat and I .... it three times a day.

a eat b feed c hit d kill

9. Osman studied hard so he .... the exams.

a failed b lost c passed d paid

10. My uncle works .... a doctor in a big hospital.

a so b as c too d but

Grammar

Defining relative clauses / pronouns عبارات / ضمائر الوصل (المحددة)

تستخدم عبارات / ضمائر الوصل لتخبرنا عن الاسم الذى نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص/ شىء/ حيوان / مكان / زمان).

1 who (that) → used for people

تحل محل اسم عاقل بمعنى (الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى)

Miss Amal is a teacher. **She** teaches us English.

Miss Amal is the teacher **who / that** teaches us English.

2 which (that) → used for things / animals

تحل محل اسم غير عاقل (شئ - حيوان) بمعنى (الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى)

That's **a horse**. **It** won the race.

That's **the horse** **which / that** won the race.

3 where → used for places

تستخدم للإشارة إلى المكان بمعنى (حيث)

This is **a house**. My grandfather lived **there.**

This is the house **where** my grandfather lived.

4 when → used for time

تستخدم للإشارة إلى الزمان بمعنى (عندما)

This month is **October.** I was born in **October.**

October is the month **when** I was born.

لاحظ الآتى:

١- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل لربط جملتين نحذف دائماً الاسم الذى يدل عليه ضمير الوصل:

ex. This is the table which I bought ~~it~~.

ex. That is my school where I learn ~~there~~ .

٢- لاحظ استخدام (which) مكان (where):

ex. This is the house which my father bought.

• استخدمنا **which** لأنها تعنى (الذى) التى تستخدم للإشارة إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن **house** كشئ وليس مكان ولذلك لم نستخدم where.

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل **(in)** مع المكان نستخدم **which** وليس **where**

ex. Tanta is the city which I was born in.

٣- لاحظ استخدام **(which)** مكان **(when)**

ex. Friday is the day which I like.

• استخدمنا **which** لأنها تعنى (الذى) وتشير إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن **Friday** ليس كوقت ولكن كشىء ولذلك لم نستخدم **when**.

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل **(in)** مع الزمان نستخدم **which** وليس **when**

ex. June is the month which I was born in.

Exercises on Lessons ③ & ④

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The books .... he used to help me were his old school books. SB

   a where b when c which d who

2. This is the club........... I play football.

   a which b who c where d when

3. October is the month .... I was born.

   a when b where c which d who

4. My aunt Dalia is a person .... is always very kind to me. SB

   a which b who c when d where

5. Ten o'clock is the time .... I go to bed every day.

   a who b where c which d when

6. Mr Ahmed is the teacher .... teaches us English.

a which b that c when d where

7. She bought me the trainers .... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team. SB

a that b where c who d when

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The tourists **what** visit Egypt always love the ancient temples. WB (...............)
2. Aswan is the city **when** there is the High Dam. (...............)
3. The market is a place **that** I often get lost! WB (...............)
4. This is the pen **who** I bought yesterday. (...............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was the watch .... my father gave me for my birthday. SB

a who b when c that d where

2. Mrs Sabri's the teacher .... taught my sister. SB

a which b when c where d who

3. That is the house .... my grandmother was born. WB

a which b where c when d who

4. What is the title of the book .... you are reading?

a when b which c who d where

5. Mr Hassan is the man .... lives next door.

a which b where c when d that

6. I gave the shoes .... are too small for me to my cousin. SB

a who b where c when d which

7. Let's go back to the beach .... we went swimming last week. SB

a when b where c who d that

8. Mr Osman has a son .... is a teacher.

a where b when c which d who

9. Ahmed is the boy .... I met in primary school.

a who   b which   c where   d when

10. Tennis is a sport .... my sister plays every week.

a where   b when   c which   d who

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The teacher **where** teaches us maths is friendly. (..........)
2. This is the village **when** my grandma was born. (..........)
3. That's the man **which** bought our old car. (..........)
4. That's the teacher **which** teaches us maths. WB (..........)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total):

(Writing skills ...في جزء

"Random acts of kindness"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 - 52 WB pages 106 -107

"Key Vocabulary"

donation	تبرع	after that	بعد ذلك
blog	مدونة على الانترنت	finally	أخيراً
first	أولاً	help (ed)	يساعد
secondly	ثانيًا	share (d)	يتقاسم / يشارك
then	ثم / بعد ذلك		

Vocabulary

canteen	مقصف / (كانتين) المدرسة	sunny	مشمس
street corner	ركن / زاوية في الشارع	the widest	الاعرض
businesswomen	سيدة أعمال	surprising events	احداث مدهشة
passport	جواز سفر	perhaps	ربما
social media	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	geography	مادة الجغرافيا
helpful	مفيد / نافع / متعاون	nearly	تقريبًا
pleased	مسرور	laboratory	معمل
hundred	مائة	snow (ed)	تمطر ثلج
thousand	الف	The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge	كوبرى محور روض الفرج
million	مليون		
notes	ملاحظات		

Expressions

as possible	قدر المستطاع
twice a week	مرتان فى الأسبوع
make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
make a decision	يتخذ قرار
acts of kindness	افعال خير
give me a smile	يعطينى ابتسامة
make someone happy	يجعل شخص سعيد
put ... in order	يرتب ...
put a smile on someone's face	يرسم بسمة على وجه شخص ما

Prepositions

decide to	يقرر ان
try to	يحاول ان
work for	يعمل لصالح
in my opinion	فى رأيى
on the way home	فى طريقى للمنزل
at first	فى البداية
help with	يساعد فى

Word Differences

a drink (n)	مشروب	drink (v)	يشرب
break (n)	فسحة / استراحة	break (v)	يكسر

Words & Opposites

agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق	possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد	heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
top	قمة	bottom	قاع				

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر	thought	thought
let	يدع	let	let
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Language Notes

1 • decide

• **decide to + inf.**

ex. I decided to travel to London next week. يقرر أن...

• **decide + that + sub فاعل + verb فعل**

ex. I decided that I should study hard. يقرر أن...

2 • in the end • at the end of

• **in the end = finally**

ex. I worked hard, and in the end, I succeeded. في النهاية

ex. We decided to travel to London in the end.

• **at the end of ....**

ex. The library is at the end of the corridor. في نهاية ...

Reading

SB page (51)



Large charity donation[1]

Fareeda El-Sadat, age 32, has "donated two million pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman[2] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to share[3] the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important[4] thing is to help as many people as possible[5].

Arabic Meaning

١- تبرع
٢- سيدة أعمال
٣- تتقاسم
٤- هام
٥- قدر المستطاع

Tapescript SB Page (48)

Amal : I think that the charities[1] should share[2] the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila : I'm not sure, Amal .... I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

Amal : OK, but which charity then?

Leila : What about a charity that helps children... or old people?

Amal : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest that they share the money.

Leila : I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

Arabic Meaning

١- جمعيات خيرية
٢- تتقاسم

Reading

SB page (52)



HASSAN'S BLOG

Randam Acts af Kindness Project

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness[1] every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised[2], but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[3] in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner[4]. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion[5], doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!.

Arabic Meaning

١- فعل خير
٢- مندهش
٣- مقصف (كانتين)
٤- ركن / زاوية
٥- فى رأيى

Reading

WB page (107)



My helpful day

First[1], I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it! Secondly[2], I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast! Then[3] I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football. After that[4], I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday. Finally[5], I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

Arabic Meaning

١- أولاً
٢- ثانياً
٣- ثم
٤- بعد ذلك
٥- أخيراً

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rich man gave the charity a large .... to build a hospital.
   a donation   b conversation   c nation   d station
2. My friend forgot his book so I .... my book with him.
   a lost   b sold   c shared   d decided
3. I write my diary online on my ....
   a lamp   b log   c chair   d blog
4. I buy chips from the .... at my school every day.
   a kitchen   b canteen   c market   d bank
5. To make a cup of tea, ... boil the water.
   a finally   b first   c last   d after that
6. I tried many times and .... I solved the maths problem.
   a loudly   b silly   c finally   d sadly
7. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the .... bridge in the world.
   a tallest   b fattest   c widest   d youngest

Homework Exercises

➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... my opinion, English is the most important language.
   a In   b For   c On   d By
2. Sarah goes to the .... to buy some cakes.
   a chemist's   b hospital   c school   d baker's
3. I like the T-shirt but I can't .... a decision about the colour.
   a make   b put   c do   d play
4. .... the way home, I saw a terrible accident.
   a At   b For   c On   d In

5. First, I did my homework, then I watched TV. .... that I went to bed.

a After b Next c And d Step

6. Fareeda El-Sadat .... two million pounds to charities in the city.

a donated b taught c bought d thought

7. The rich man decided to give .... his money to one charity.

a every b each c both d all

8. Our class decided to do one act of .... every day.

a kindness b weakness c sadness d careless

9. I think that famous people should work .... a charity.

a as b for c by d back

10. I'm happy to .... a smile on my brother's face.

a take b make c put d buy



Language Functions

1 Giving opinion — إبداء الرأى

للتعبير عن رأى نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

I think that (the charities should).....	أعتقد أنه (يجب على المؤسسة أن)....
I'm not sure.........	أنا غير متأكد ....
In my opinion	فى رأيى .....
I think it would be better if.......	أعتقد أنه سيكون من الأفضل لو ....
I see what you mean	أفهم ما تقصد ....
I agree that it's very important to	اتفق أنه هام جدا ان ....
but I also think it's important to	لكن أعتقد أنه من المهم أن ....
Good idea.	فكرة رائعة.

2 Putting things in order — ترتيب عمل الأشياء

First, (أولًا) Secondly (ثانيًا) Then (ثم) After that (بعد ذلك) Finally (أخيرًا)

3 Obligation and lack of obligation الإلزام وعدم الإلزام

A: Do you **have to** study this evening, Omar?
B: Yes, I do. I have a maths test tomorrow.
A: Where do we **have to** go the next lesson?
B: The laboratory! We've got science.
A: Do you have to get up early on Fridays?
B: No, I don't.

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the dialogue with the correct form of hove to:

SB

Nasser : ❶ .... you have to study this evening, Omar?
Omar : Yes, I do. I ❷ .... a geography test tomorrow.
Nasser : What about your brother? Does he have ❸ .... study, too?
Omar : No, he ❹ ...., but he has to tidy up his bedroom: it's really messy!
Nasser : It's nearly the end of break. Where ❺ .... we have to go for the next lesson?
Omar : The laboratory! We've got science.

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is the trainer .... trains us in the club.
   a which b where c who d when
2. This is the house .... my father bought yesterday.
   a where b which c when d who
3. April is the month .... I was born in.
   a which b when c where d who

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. At school, we <u>have</u> wear a uniform. (..............)
2. Does he <u>has</u> to buy a car? (..............)

Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 Random Acts of Kindness

Our class decided to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did: on the first day, I bought my mother flowers. On the second day, I gave my seat to an old man on the bus. On the third day, I donated money and clothes to a charity which helps disabled people.

My friend Hossam did some acts of kindness, too. On the first day, he gave money to a beggar. On the second day, he gave directions to a stranger. On the third day, he helped an old woman cross a street.

2 School rules

There are some school rules that I have to follow. At school, I have to arrive on time. I have to listen to my teacher. I don't have to answer all the questions. I have to wear the school uniform. I don't have to play at break. I have to behave well.

In the library, I have to keep quiet. I have to give the books back on time. I have to put away the books after I read them. I mustn't eat at the library.

3 How you could help people in your community

I can do many acts of kindness to people in my community. I can work as a volunteer in a charity or hospital. I can pick up rubbish and put it in bins. I can help my neighbours by doing the shopping. I can donate things and money to a charity.

I have to help my old neighbours. I have to keep the street clean. This helps the street cleaners so much. I have to help beggars who are hungry. I have to be helpful in my community.

Unit 5 Review

"Key Vocabulary Review"

random	عشوائى	first	أولاً	community	مجتمع محلى (صغير)
stranger (s)	غريب (غرباء)	secondly	ثانيًا	feed (fed) (fed)	يطعم
fantastic	رائع	after that	بعد ذلك	behave (d)	يتصرف / يسلك
kindness	طيبة / عطف	then	ثم / بعد ذلك	share (d)	يتقاسم / يشارك
lift	مصعد (أسانسير)	finally	أخيراً	donate (d)	يتبرع
messy	فوضوى (غير منظم)	disabled	معاق	smile (n) (d)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
donation	تبرع	cruel	قاسى	pick up (ed)	يلتقط / يوصل (شخص)
blog	مدونة على الانترنت	servant	خادم / خادمة	help (ed)	يساعد
take out the rubbish	يخرج القمامة	princess	أميرة	cook (ed)	يطهو / يطبخ
		beggar	متسول	look after (ed)	يعتنى بـ
put away the clothes	يضع الملابس فى مكانها المعتاد	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	tidy up (ied)	يرتب
				wash up (ed)	يغسل الاوانى

Grammar Review

Obligation and lack of obligation
الإلزام وعدم الإلزام

1 have to / don't have to, has to / doesn't have to

للتعبير عن الإلزام / الضرورة فى المضارع (أى قواعد معينة من الضرورى أن نتبعها ولا خيار أمامنا) نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have to } + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has to }

ex. I have to be quiet at the library.

للتعبير عن عدم الإلزام فى المضارع (أشياء ليس من الضرورى أن نفعلها) نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't have to } + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't have to }

ex. Tamer doesn't have to walk to school. He has got a bike.

لعمل سؤال عن الإلزام / الضرورة فى المضارع نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to + inf...?

ex. Do you have to clean the streets? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
ex. Why does she have to find a new job?

2 should / shouldn't (for advice)

Form التكوين

• للنصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

ex. We should always do acts of kindness.

• للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم should not (shouldn't)

ex. We shouldn't watch TV all day.

• للسؤال عن النصيحة نستخدم:

(كلمة استفهام) + should + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. Should I make my bed?

- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

ex. When should I start to revise for the exam?

- Three days before the exam.

3 Defining relative clauses / pronouns عبارات / ضمائر الوصل (المحددة)

➤ تستخدم عبارات / ضمائر الوصل لتخبرنا عن الاسم الذى نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص/ شيء/ حيوان / مكان / زمان).

1 who (that) → used for people

ex. Omar is an architect. He designs buildings.

ex. Omar is the architect who / that designs buildings.

2 which (that) → used for things / animals

ex. That's a schoolbag. It has many books.

ex. That's the schoolbag which / that has many books.

3 where → used for places

ex. This is a cinema. I always see movies there.

ex. This is the cinema where I always see movie.

4 when → used for time

ex. This month is July. I was born in July.

ex. July is the month when I was born.

General Exercises on Unit 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Radwa : What charities do you know?
Taqwa : I know a charity which ❶ .... after animals that are old or sick
Radwa : How do people help in it?
Taqwa : People ❷ .... money to the charity.
Radwa : ❸ .... do they do this?
Taqwa : They help to feed the animals and look after them.
Radwa : How can you help in the community?
Taqwa : I visit a home for old people who are disabled and help them. ❹ .... about you?
Radwa : I work as a ❺ .... for a charity which helps to clean our local beach
Taqwa : That's fantastic!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. English is the subject .... I like most.
   a which b where c who d when
2. Those children are ...., they always hit their pets.
   a cruel b pretty c disabled d delicious
3. Soha joined a .... school. She comes home every weekend.
   a spending b boarding c standing d building
4. These are the exams .... we took last summer.
   a who b that c where d when
5. The person .... I love most is my mother
   a which b when c who d where
6. That's the horse .... won the race.
   a which b who c where d when
7. Ramy is the boy .... can run really fast.
   a that b when c which d where
8. The café .... I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
   a when b who c which d where

SB

9 You left the bag .... you bought at the airport at my house.

a where b which c who d when

10 These are the photos .... I took at the zoo last week.

a which b who c when d where

11 Help him to put .... her toys.

a up b out c away d on

12 Nader and his brother have to .... ready for school.

a make b get c let d eat

13 What .... acts of kindness should you do next week?

a cruel b random c bad d ugly

14 Samir helps to clean beaches and .... rubbish.

a picks up b tidies up c washes up d laugh

15 People donate money to the charity and they help to .... the animals.

a eat b feed c kill d hit

3 Read and correct the underlined words.

1 You **shouldn't** study hard. (............)

2 Students shouldn't **forgot** how it feels when they start school. (............)

3 We bought a flat **who** is near our school. (............)

4 That's the restaurant **when** we had lunch yesterday. (............)

4 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

Writing skills

"School rules"

TEST 6 UNIT 5

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One day, Eman found some ....
   a money b pens c books d rulers
2. She went to the baker's to buy some ....
   a buns b cakes c bread d fruit
3. When Eman came out, she saw a ....
   a doctor b farmer c vet d beggar
4. She gave the .... most of her cakes.
   a teacher b baker c beggar d farmer

B Language Functions

2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmad : What is this week's school project about?
Ashraf : It's about how to keep our school clean.
Ahmad : Do you have rubbish ❶ .... in your school?
Ashraf : Yes, we have ❷ .... in each classroom.
Ahmad : What do you do for the project?
Ashraf : We ❸ .... posters and put them on the walls.
Ahmad : Who helps you?
Ashraf : The headteacher and all our ❹ ....
Ahmad : It's a great project. Well ❺ ....
Ashraf : Thank you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 ➤ Read the following, then answer the questions:

The air around the earth contains different gases. One of these is carbon dioxide. Although it is a natural gas, <u>it</u> can also be caused by pollution. Pollution from cars and factories produces carbon dioxide. This is a problem. If there is too much carbon dioxide in the air, the temperature on the earth will increase. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic and Antarctica will melt quickly. The sea will get higher and this will cause floods.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is carbon dioxide?

....

2. What does the underlined word "**it**" refer to?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic will ....
   a) freeze b) melt c) cool d) rain
4. If the seas get higher, they may cause..............
   a) droughts b) earthquakes c) volcanoes d) floods
5. .... can be caused by pollution.
   a) Oxygen b) Carbon dioxide c) Nitrogen d) Hydrogen

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is the daughter of a king or queen. WB
   a) prince b) beggar c) princess d) farmer
2. There is an important test tomorrow, so you .... play video games. SB
   a) should b) have to c) has to d) shouldn't
3. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous, so you .... do what your teachers tell you. WB
   a) don't have to b) have to c) shouldn't d) can't
4. My family has moved to a new house and luckily our new .... are nice.
   a) neighbours b) relatives c) friends d) teachers
5. The place .... I lost my watch was the garden. SB
   a) when b) who c) that d) where
6. I saw Ahmed in the park .... we often play football. SB
   a) who b) that c) where d) when
7. The boy .... was my best friend at school moved to a different city. SB
   a) that b) who c) which d) where
8. What is the name of a charity which you would like to .... money to? WB
   a) donate b) steal c) burn d) sell

9. My sister is a happy person who always has a .... on her face.

a smile b mile c file d tail

10. A .... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs.

a left b lift c gift d ladder

5 ▸ Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She **should** carry heavy things. She is tired. (..........)
2. You **should** run if your legs hurt. WB (..........)
3. This is the museum **who** the school visited last year. WB (..........)
4. I love the trainers **who** are blue and red. WB (..........)

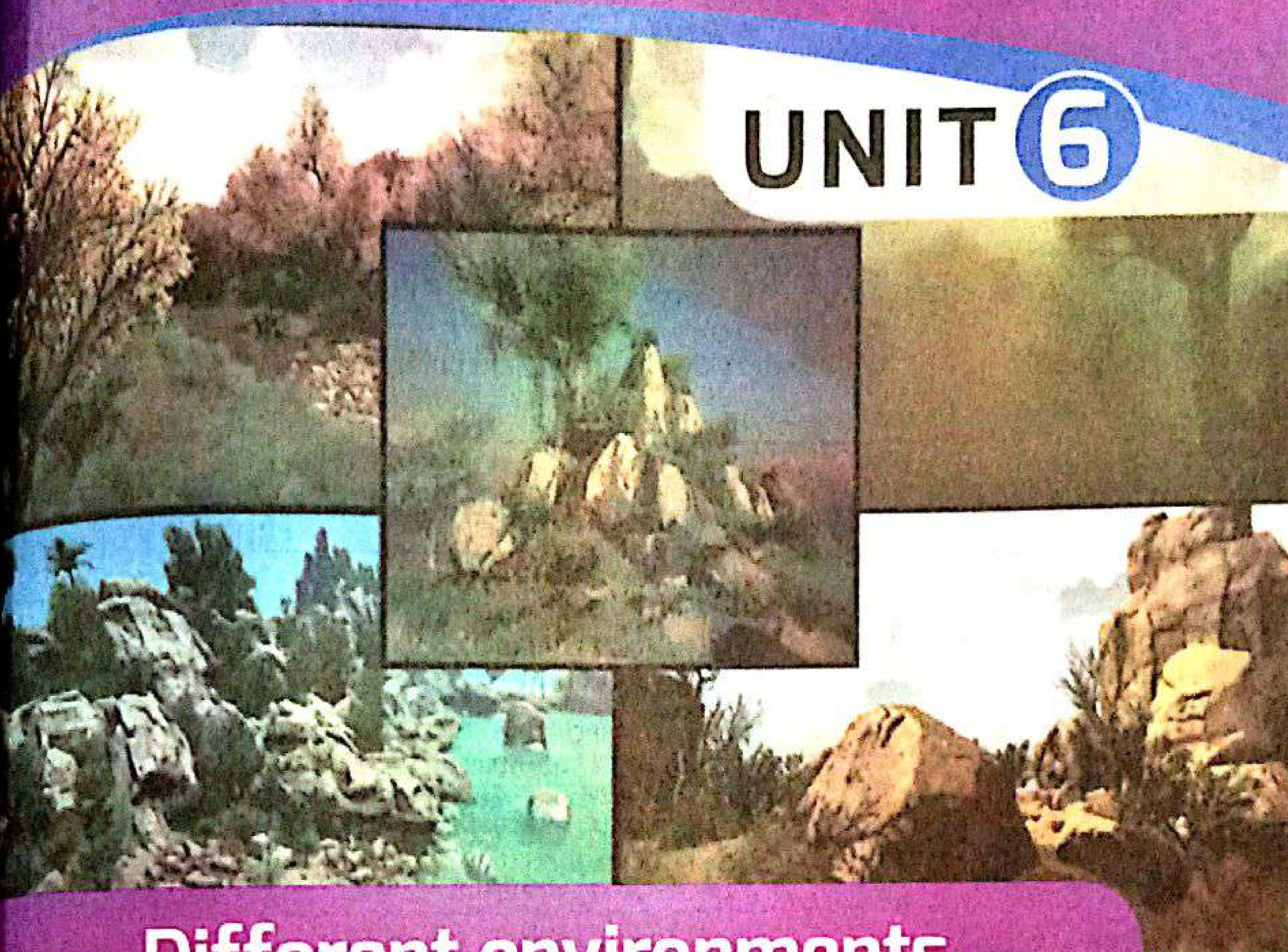
E Writing

6 ▸ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills عنه في جزء

"How you could help people in your community"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



UNIT 6

Different environments

Objectives

Reading:
A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report

Writing:
A profile of where you live; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate

Listening:
Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism

Speaking:
Solving environmental problems; suggesting solutions to a problem

Language:
(not} as + adjective + as; present simple passive

Life Skills:
Negotiating; problem solving

Values:
Coexistence values; responsible behaviour

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 109-1

"Key Vocabulary"

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	x-axis	محور السينات
water pollution	تلوث المياه	y-axis	محور الصادات
drought	جفاف	green	صديق البيئة
flood	فيضان	environment	البيئة
rubbish	قمامة	bar chart	رسم بيانى بالأعمدة
polluted	مُلَوث	climate change	تغير المناخ
line graph	رسم بيانى خطى	melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر

Vocabulary

volunteer	متطوع	clean	نظيف
electric train/bus	قطار/أتوبيس كهربى	relaxing	يساعد على الاسترخاء
canal	قناة مائية	comfortable	مريح
Australia	قارة أستراليا	attractive	جذاب
Europe	قارة أوروبا	interesting	شيق
presentation	عرض تقديمى	cheap	رخيص
fires	حرائق	fuel	وقود
warm	دافئ	planet	كوكب
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو	temperature	درجة الحرارة
Mount Catherine	جبل كاترين	serious	خطير/جاد
Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى	recycling	إعادة التدوير
user	مستخدم	electricity	الكهرباء
Saudi Arabia	دولة السعودية	cause (n) (d)	سبب/يسبب
Iraq	دولة العراق	continue (d)	يواصل/يستمر
Jordan	دولة الأردن	change (n) (d)	تغير/يتغير
recently	حديثًا/ مؤخرًا	report (ed)	يراسل / يقدم تقرير
form of transport	وسيلة مواصلات	warn (ed)	يحذر
seat	مقعد ثابت		

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning
air pollution تلوث الهواء	dirt and dangerous chemicals(1) in the air, often from traffic(2)
axis (x and y) محور (السينات والصادات)	the lines(3) that have numbers/information(4) on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side)
bar chart رسم بيانى بالأعمدة	a diagram(5) or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different amounts
climate change تغير المناخ	changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans(6) are doing
drought جفاف	when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry
flood فيضان	a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before
green صديق للبيئة	connected to protecting(7) the environment
line graph رسم بيانى خطى	a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to(8) each other
melt يذوب / ينصهر	change from ice to water
polluted مُلَوث	made dirty(9) or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things

Arabic Meaning

١- مواد كيميائية
٢- المرور
٣- خطوط
٤- معلومات
٥- رسم بيانى
٦- البشر
٧- حماية
٨- متعلق بـ
٩- متسخ

Expressions

write in English	يكتب باللغة الإنجليزية
as much as	كثير مثل
green forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات صديقة البيئة
usual forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات المعتادة
changing world	العالم المتغير
get smaller	يصبح أصغر

Prepositions

know about	يعرف عن
for days	لمدة أيام
walk to	يمشى إلى
good at	جيد فى
careful about	حريص بشأن
report for	يكتب تقرير لـ

Word Differences

pollution	التلوث	population	عدد السكان
canal	قناة مائية	channel	قناة تلفزيونية أو مائية
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات

Words & Opposites

usual معتاد	unusual غير معتاد	cheap رخيص	expensive الثمن
dry جاف	wet ممطر		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يظهر / يبين	showed	shown
become	يصبح	became	become
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken



Language Notes

1 • electricity • electric • electronic

• **electricity** كهرباء

ex. My car doesn't use fuel. It runs on electricity.

• **electric** كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)

ex. Thomas Edison invented the electric bulb.

• **electronic** إلكترونى

ex. Most kids love electronic games.

2 • climate • weather

• **climate** المناخ (حالة الجو الدائمة فى مكان ما)

ex. Most tourists like to visit Egypt where the climate is warm.

• **weather** الطقس (حالة الجو المؤقتة فى مكان ما)

ex. What is the weather like today in Egypt?

- It's cold and rainy.

Tapescript SB page (55)



Girl : Hello, this is Jomana reporting[1] for *Student Radio in Cairo*. Recently[2], volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more and more rubbish in the water. They say the river is dirtier and more polluted than ever before. They are warning[3] people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the river become cleaner.

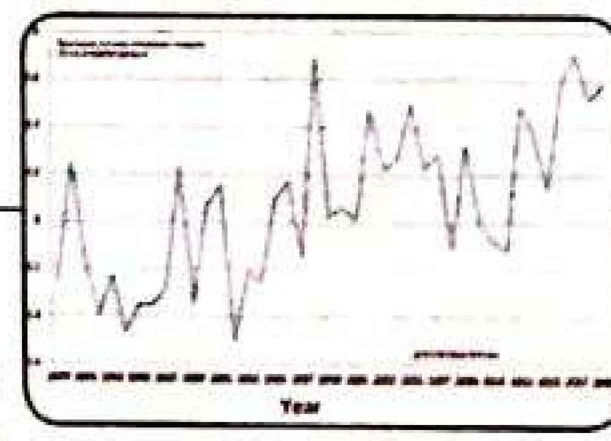
Boy : This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for *Student FM*. Today our city started using new electric[4] buses. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener[5]. The buses will mean there is less air pollution in the city, and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable[6].

Arabic Meaning

١- يراسل
٢- مؤخرًا
٣- يحذر
٤- كهربى
٥- صديقة للبيئة
٦- مريح

Reading

SB page (56)



A changing world

• Today's presentation is about climate change. This means our planet[1] is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

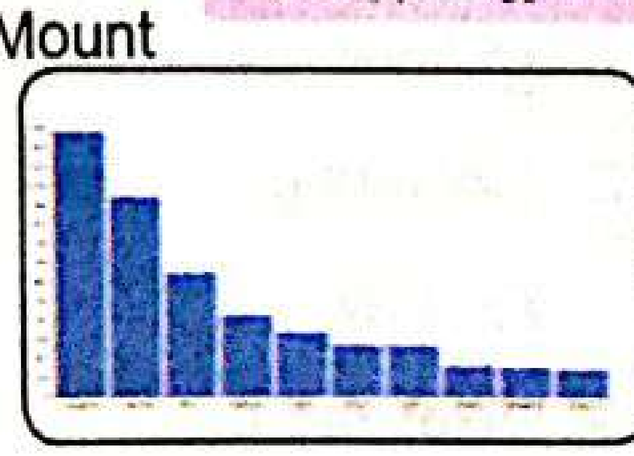
Australia

In this line graph[2], the x-axis[3] shows the year, and the y-axis[4] shows the change in temperature[5]. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.

More droughts[6]* mean worse fires[7] than ever before. Climate change[8] means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

Mount Kilimanjaro

This bar chart[9] shows that warmer and drier weather is melting[10] the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing[11] to get smaller.



Arabic Meaning

١- كوكب
٢- رسم بيانى خطى
٣- محور السينات
٤- محور الصادات
٥- درجة الحرارة
٦- جفاف
٧- حرائق
٨- تغير المناخ
٩- رسم بيانى بالأعمدة
١٠- يُذيب
١١- يواصل / يستمر

Say it correctly

* drought — انطق الحروف (ought) فى هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة out

Exercises on Lessons ① & ②

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please take your .... home, do not leave it in the park.
   a fuel b drought c rubbish d flood
2. It was raining for days and then there was a .... so people used boats to leave their houses!
   a flood b volcano c drought d presentation
3. The .... did a lot of harm to the crops.
   a water b sun c air d drought
4. The world must solve the problem of .... change.
   a mountain b climate c earthquake d storm
5. If you heat ice, it .... into water.
   a freezes b cools c wets d melts
6. The electric bus is .... as it doesn't cause pollution.
   a blue b green c black d pink
7. Many rivers and lakes are seriously ....
   a called b donated c polluted d visited

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a .... WB
   a flood b storm c pollution d drought
2. Not many fish live in the river because it is very .... WB
   a clean b fresh c polluted d pure
3. Bikes are a .... form of transport because they use no fuel. WB
   a white b green c blue d red

4. .... can happen during heavy rain.

   a Floods   b Droughts   c Fires   d Volcanoes

5. Cars and buses are the main cause of air.......... .

   a population   b pollution   c health   d cleanliness

6. My grandfather died from a .... disease.

   a quiet   b nice   c safe   d serious

7. He worked as a/an .... for a charity that helps disabled people.

   a volunteer   b actor   c farmer   d tourist

8. The .... chart shows the number of the houses that were damaged by the floods.

   a far   b bar   c needle   d star

9. Cars, buses and trains are forms of ....

   a sport   b colour   c transport   d job

10. He writes reports for a magazine .... English.

   a on   b with   c from   d in

11. The number of cars in our city is presented on the .... in the graph.

   a x-rays   b x-axis   c x-files   d x-rates

Grammar

Comparative and Superlative adjectives ...فات المقارنة والتفضيل

...م الصفات إلى قصيرة وطويلة.

...لة الصفات القصيرة

noisy	صاخب	green	صديق للبيئة	clean	
high	عالي	dry	جاف	large	

...لة الصفات الطويلة

polluted	ملوث	expensive	غالي الثمن	attractive	
comfortable	مريح	difficult	صعب	interesting	

...تخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

...تخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

...تلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	**صفة + er + than** **"higher than"** **ex.** Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	**the + صفة + est** **"the highest"** **ex.** Mount Everest is the highe... mountain.
long adjective "modern"	**أقل أكثر** **more / less + صفة + than** **ex.** My city is more polluted than your city.	**الأقل الأكثر** **the most / the least + صفة** **ex.** Ali's city is the most polluted one.

...لتعبير عن تساوي شخصين / شيئين في نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + (be) + as + صفة + as + اسم

ex. Droughts are as **serious** as floods.

...لتعبير عن عدم تساوي شخصين / شيئين في نفس الصفة نستخدم

اسم + (be) + not as + صفة + as + اسم

ex. Australia is not as hot as Africa.

ex. The ice on Kilimanjaro isn't melting as fast as before.

• عند التعبير عن (عدم) التساوى بين فعلين نستخدم:

فعل + فاعل + as + حال + as (not) + فعل

ex. Ahmed plays the piano as beautifully as he plays the flute.
ex. She doesn't speak English as **carefully** as she writes it.

لاحظ

many → كثير (اسم يعد)	more than	→ the most
few → قليل (اسم يعد)	fewer than	→ the fewest
much → كثير (اسم لا يعد)	more than	→ the most
little → قليل (اسم لا يعد)	less than	→ the least

ex. Ahmed has books as many as Osman has.
ex. Mona makes money as much as Amal does.

تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

• إذا انتهت الصفة بـ حرف ساكن + y تحول y إلى i نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy ⇨ noisier than ⇨ the noisiest / busy ⇨ busier than ⇨ the busiest

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير:

big ⇨ bigger than ⇨ the biggest / thin ⇨ thinner than ⇨ the thinnest

ملاحظات

١- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ كما هي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيء	worse than	the worst
far بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

٢- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن than عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر in بعد صفات التفضيل إذا تلاها اسم مفرد يدل على مكان أو اسم يدل على مجموعة (team / class ...):

ex. My sister is the tallest in our family.
ex. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

- بينما نستخدم حرف الجر of إذا تلاها اسم جمع:

ex. Ahmed is the cleverest of all his friends.
ex. Some people think maths is the most difficult of all.

Exercises on Lessons (1) & (2)

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The canal is --------- polluted than it was before.
   a most   b more   c little   d few
2. The volunteers want to make the canal --------- .
   a cleanest   b more clean   c cleaner   d most clean   SB
3. The electric buses in Alexandria cause --------- air pollution so they are greener than the old buses.
   a less   b little   c least   d many   SB
4. The box is not as --------- as the chair.
   a heavy   b heavier   c heaviest   d more heavy
5. Bikes are --------- than cars.
   a green   b greenest   c greener   d more green   SB
6. Mount Kenya is not as --------- as Mount Kilimanjaro.
   a higher   b highest   c high   d more high   SB
7. I think that air pollution is as serious --------- water pollution.
   a just   b as   c too   d also

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The football players are not playing as **good** as they did last week. WB
   (---------)
2. Tamer likes reading as **many** as he likes playing computer games . WB
   (---------)
3. Mount Catherine is a **high** mountain than Jabal Mousa. WB (---------)
4. Is your cousin **more old** than your brother?
   (---------)

Homework Exercises

1. Europe is not as --------- as Australia.
   a dry   b drier   c driest   d less dry
2. The pollution in the countryside is not as --------- as the pollution in cities. SB
   a worse   b bad   c worst   d most bad

3. Recycling is --------- as using less electricity for the environment. SB

a more important b less important c not important d as important

4. Saudi Arabia is not as --------- as Jordan. WB

a wetter b wet c wettest d more wet

5. A train is not as fast --------- a plane. WB

a so b too c as d just

6. Nessma writes in English as --------- as she speaks it. WB

a careful b more careful c most careful d carefully

7. The drought this year is not as --------- as it was last year. WB

a more dangerous b less dangerous

c dangerous d as dangerous

8. There weren't people as --------- as I expected.

a much b fewest c many d little

9. Our team didn't play as --------- as they usually did.

a good b better c best d well

10. People think that the seats on the new buses are more comfortable --------- the old buses. SB

a then b that c there d than

2 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This new phone is **more bad** than my old one! WB (-------------)
2. I think that the river is more polluted **then** it was last year. WB (-------------)
3. Which is **more far** to walk to, the park or the museum? WB (-------------)
4. 2019 was the **hotter** year in Australia. SB (-------------)

"Key Vocabulary"

canal	قناة مائية	wildlife	الحياة البرية
cotton	القطن	desert	صحراء
mosque	مسجد	tourism	السياحة
ship	سفينة	pet	حيوان أليف
sweets	حلوى	the world	العالم
(be) located	واقع (موجود) فى مكان ما	damage (d)	يتلف / يدمر
camel	جمل	locate (d)	يحدد موقع

Vocabulary

Port Said	بورسعيد	spotlight	تسليط الضوء
north-east	شمال شرق	travel companies	شركات السفر
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	recycling bins	سلات إعادة التدوير
rules	قواعد	metal cans	علبة معدن
Al-Ahmadi Mosque	المسجد الاحمدى	owner	مالك
wheat	قمح	scuba diving	الغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس
sugar	سكر	green energy	مصادر الطاقة صديقة البيئة
black honey	عسل اسود	exactly	بالضبط
ancient monuments	آثار قديمة	produce (d)	ينتج
tourist	سائح	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
turtle	سلحفاة	name (d)	يسمى
coast	ساحل	connect (ed)	يربط / يصل
the Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر	protect (ed)	يحمى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	respect (ed)	يحترم
the Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	believe (d)	يصدق
nature reserves	محميات طبيعية	pray (ed)	يصلى

Words & Meanings

canal	قناة مائية	a long area of water made for ships and boats
cotton	قطن	a plant used for making clothes
(be)located	واقع فى مكان ما	in a particular(1) place or position(2)
mosque	مسجد / جامع	a building where you can pray(3)
locate	يحدد موقع	find or discover the exact(4) position of something
wildlife	الحياة البرية	animals and plants that live in natural conditions(5)

Arabic Meaning

١- معين / محدد
٢- موقع
٣- يصلى
٤- دقيق
٥- ظروف طبيعية

Expressions

main focus	التركيز الرئيسى
my home city	مسقط رأسى
green hotels	فنادق صديقة للبيئة
green tourism	سياحة صديقة للبيئة
go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
go scuba diving	يغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس
as usual	كالمعتاد
as a result	كنتيجة
do water sports	يمارس الرياضات المائية

Prepositions

famous for	مشهور بسبب
known for	معروف بـ
closed to	مغلق على
connected to	مرتبط بـ
example of	مثال لـ
on the Red Sea	على البحر الاحمر
spotlight on	تسليط الضوء على
on the beach	على الشاطئ
on farms	فى مزارع
interested in	مهتم بـ
along the river	بمحاذاة النهر

Word Differences

along	بمحاذاة	long	طويل
tourism	السياحة	tourist	سائح

Words & Opposites

known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف
connect	يربط	disconnect	يقطع الاتصال

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
grow	يتزايد/ينمو	grew	grown
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught
find	يجد	found	found
know	يعرف	knew	known

Language Notes

• coast • beach

• **coast** ساحل (المنطقة التى يتقابل بها البحر مع اليابسة على الخريطة)

ex. We drove along the Red Sea Coast.

• **beach** شاطئ (المنطقة التى بها رمال أو حصى على البحر)

ex. The kids went to the beach and built sandcastles.

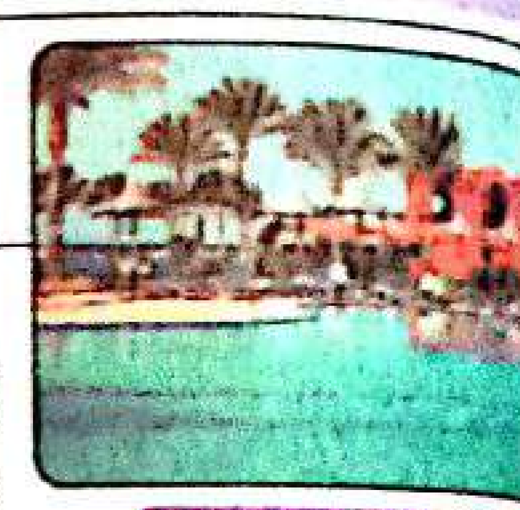


Tapescript SB Page (60)

Podcast Presenter: Today on Environment Matters[1] we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast[2]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[3] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage[4] the environment.

Arabic Meaning

١- قضايا
٢- ساحل
٣- وزارة السياحة
٤- يتلف



Tapescript SB Page (60)

Podcast Presenter: Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism [1] and the environment, is that right?

Salma: Exactly[2], Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs[3] and lots of important wildlife[4] , like sharks[5], dolphins and turtles.

Podcast Presenter: So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

Salma: Well, the islands[6] on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[7]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies[8]. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Podcast Presenter: Good idea!

Salma: We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special[9] environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving[10].

Arabic Meaning

١- السياحة
٢- بالضبط
٣- الشعب المرجانية
٤- الحياة البرية
٥- أسماك القرش
٦- جُزر
٧- محميات طبيعية
٨- شركات السفر
٩- خاص
١٠- الغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس

Reading

WB Page.112



The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists[1]. However, the hotel owner[2] said that last year, there were not as many turtles[3] on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand[4], the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

Arabic Meaning

١- سائحون
٢- مالك
٣- سلاحف
٤- رمال
٥- رحلات بالقوارب
٦- طاقة صديقة للبيئة
٧- رياح

The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers.

The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips[5] is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy[6] from the sun and wind[7] is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces very little rubbish: most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.

Exercises on Lessons ③ & ④

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The water of the .... is polluted by some factories.
   a fire b canal c sky d storm
2. We should wear clothes that are made of .... in summer.
   a wool b wood c plastic d cotton
3. I go to the .... five times a day to pray.
   a mosque b cinema c club d library
4. The .... sailed down the Nile River to Alex.
   a plane b bike c ship d bus

5. You shouldn't eat many .... They aren't healthy.
   a fruit b vegetables c fish d sweets
6. Alexandria is .... in the north of Egypt.
   a located b donated c dusted d stayed
7. A .... can live for 15 days without water. It is called the ship of the desert.
   a mouse b camel c cat d turtle

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt has a lot of ancient monuments so we depend on ....
   a industry b tourism c computers d transport
2. Many people have dogs in their houses as ....
   a kids b servants c pets d nurses
3. Paris is famous .... the Eiffel Tower
   a from b for c by d in
4. I visited Aswan with my family and we saw a lot of ancient ....
   a planes b computers c monuments d tablets
5. Tourists go scuba .... in Hurghada and Sharm el- Sheikh
   a diving b driving c riding d hiding
6. I like to study animals and everything related to ....
   a classroom b bedroom c wildlife d school
7. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral .... WB
   a roofs b beef c reefs d leaf
8. .... rubbish is important for the environment.
   a Cycling b Recycling c Burning d Growing
9. The East Hotel is very new. Only .... energy from the sun and wind is used at the hotel. WB
   a black b blue c green d yellow
10. Earthquakes can .... many buildings in minutes.
   a damage b locate c manage d recycle

Grammar

Present simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

تتكون الجملة الخبرية فى اللغة الإنجليزية كما يلى:

مفعول ← فعل ← فاعل

يسمى التركيب السابق مبنى للمعلوم (active) حيث أننا بدأنا الجملة بالفاعل:

ex. People grow lots of cotton in the area.

هناك صيغة أخرى للجملة تسمى مبنى للمجهول (passive) ونستخدمها عندما:

١- لا يكون الفاعل مهم ويكون الفعل أهم.

٢- لا يكون الفاعل معلوم ويكون المفعول هو الأهم.

وفيما يلى طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم إلى المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

ناتب فاعل + (am / is / are) + P.P. فعل الجملة فى التصريف الثالث + (by + فاعل)

١- يأتى المفعول أول الجملة (أى يصبح ناتب فاعل للجملة)

٢- نضع (am / is / are) قبل فعل الجملة الأساسى

٣- يحول فعل الجملة الأساسى إلى التصريف الثالث

٤- يمكن وضع الفاعل أخر الجملة مكان المفعول مسبوق بكلمة (by) ويمكن عدم ذكرهما

Farmers grow rice. **(active)**

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

Rice is grown by farmers. **(passive)**

لاحظ الآتى

إذا كان فـي الجملـة فعـل ناقص (مصدر الفعل can / will + inf) فعنـد التحويل للمبني للمجهول يكون شكل الجملة كالآتى:

ناتب فاعل + will / can be + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

ex. We can see ice on mountains. **(active)**

= Ice can be seen on mountains. **(passive)**

لاحظ:

lots of / a lot of + {اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع} + (books) are

lots of / a lot of + {اسم لا يعد} + (rice) is

ex. A lot of cotton is grown in Tanta.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The city --------- for its ships, which come and go from around the world. SB
   a is knowing b knows c known d is known
2. Port Said is --------- to Suez by the Suez Canal. SB
   a connect b connecting c connects d connected
3. Many fish are --------- in the sea near Port Said. SB
   a caught b catching c catches d catch
4. Lots of cotton --------- in the area. SB
   a are grown b is grow c grows d is grown
5. The North Hotel is --------- on a lovely beach. WB
   a locate b located c locates d locating
6. Coral reefs are often --------- by scuba divers. WB
   a damaging b damages c damaged d damage
7. Football is --------- all around the world.
   a playing b play c plays d played

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Many vegetables are <u>grow</u> by the farmers around here. SB (-------------)
2. The museum is <u>visiting</u> by lots of people every year. (-------------)
3. Port Said is <u>locate</u> in the north-east of Egypt. SB (-------------)
4. The city is <u>know</u> by tourists for its beautiful buildings. (-------------)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of wheat --------- in Egypt.
   a are grown b were grown c is grown d grow
2. Tourists --------- hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day. WB
   a is taken b are taken c taken d take

3. Minya is .... near the Nile.

a locate b located c locating d locates

4. Lots of food is .... in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. SB

a grow b grew c grows d grown

5. The city .... known for its delicious 'black honey'. SB

a am b are c is d were

6. The honey is .... from sugar. WB

a make b made c makes d making

7. Many ancient monuments and buildings are .... in the city. SB

a found b find c finding d finds

8. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited .... thousands of people every year. SB

a to b for c by d on

9. Parts of the beach are .... to tourists so that turtles are safe. WB

a closed b closing c closes d to closing

10. Taha .... for his funny stories. WB

a are known b knows c is known d knew

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Tourists **is visited** the Red Sea from around the world. (..........)
2. Many sweets are **eating** every day. (..........)
3. A lot of oranges **is** grown along the river. WB (..........)
4. Giza is **knowing** for its ancient pyramids. WB (..........)

3 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total):

(Writing skills اجاب عنه في جزء

"The place where you live"

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6

"Key Vocabulary"

recycling	إعادة التدوير	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
billion	مليار	riverbank	ضفة النهر
climate change	التغير المناخى	remind (ed)	يُذكِر
idea	فكرة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
problem	مشكلة		

Vocabulary

Global Recycling Day	يوم إعادة التدوير العالمى	including	مشتمل على
Amsterdam	مدينة أمستردام	gas	غاز
Netherlands	دولة هولندا	tonne	طن
city centre	وسط المدينة	South Korea	كوريا الجنوبية
plastic bags	حقائب بلاستيك	Sidi Barrani	سيدى برانى
plastic pollution	تلوث البلاستيك	Mersa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم
smoke	دخان/عادم	sailing	الإبحار
factory	مصنع	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
storm	عاصفة	driving	القيادة
vote	تصويت (انتخابى)	collect (ed)	يجمع
important	هام	solve (d)	يحل
importance	أهمية	clean up (ed)	ينظف
handball	كرة اليد	aim (ed)	يهدف
fig	تين	improve (d)	يحسِّن
wonderful	رائع		

Expressions

possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
Well done!	احسنت!
get warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئاً
water from washing	المياه الناتجة من غسيل الأشياء

Prepositions

for example	على سبيل المثال
talk about	يتكلم عن
part of	جزء من
lie on	يرقد على
at the moment	فى الوقت الحالى
in the future	فى المستقبل

Word Differences

recycle يعيد تصنيع او تدوير	reuse يعيد استخدام

Words & Opposites

the least الأقل ↔ the most الأكثر	difficult صعب ↔ easy سهل
less أقل ↔ more أكثر	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يُدّرس	taught	taught
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
bring	يجلب / يُحضر	brought	brought
burn	يحترق / يحرق	burnt	burnt
lead	يؤدى	led	led



Language Notes

1 • remember • remind

- **remember** يتذكر
  ex. I couldn't remember where I lost my keys.
- **remind** يُذكر
  ex. Remind me to buy some eggs tonight.

2 • souvenirs • presents

- **souvenirs** هدايا تذكارية
  ex. Tourists bought souvenirs to remember their visit to Aswan.
- **presents** هدايا
  ex. I got many presents on my birthday.

Tapescript SB Page (61)



Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water?
Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?
Reem : How could we do that?
Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem : That's an interesting idea! The plants would like that!

Reading

SB page (62)



Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank(1) near the city centre. The students collected(2) 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe(3)!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we needed to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damaged(4) the wildlife(5)."

Well done(6) to the volunteers!

Arabic Meaning

١- ضفة النهر
٢- جمعوا
٣- فردة حذاء
٤- أتلف / دمر
٥- الحياة البرية
٦- أحسنتم

Reading

WB page (114)



Global Recycling Day is an event in March. It aims to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal(1), water and even gas and oil. It started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries(2).

In 2018, people produced(3) about 11 billion tonnes of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt(4) and this can lead to climate change.

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles more than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled just 3%. South Korea(5) recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more, because you can recycle them. Most countries hope(6) to recycle more in the future.

Arabic Meaning

١- معدن
٢- دول
٣- ينتج
٤- يحرق
٥- كوريا الجنوبية
٦- يأمل

Exercises on Lessons (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Old plastic bottles can be .... into toys.
   a cycled b recycled c burnt d paid
2. The number of people living on Earth is 7.7 .... people.
   a hundred b thousand c million d billion
3. At the moment , a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to .... change. WB
   a climate b date c rate d place
4. Visiting the museum was a great .... I enjoyed myself.
   a match b game c idea d park
5. If we don't recycle plastic , we will face a big ....
   a party b problem c holiday d wedding
6. Tourists bought small statues of the pyramid as ....
   a meals b sports c souvenirs d time
7. Write down a few notes to .... yourself of what you want to say.
   a remind b remember c forget d miss

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The river is polluted because people throw rubbish near the ....
   a pool b sink c beach d riverbank
2. There was a fire in our house and I couldn't breathe because of the ....
   a water b smoke c wood d plant
3. The truck is very big. It weighs 4 ....
   a grams b kilograms c tonnes d years
4. We can recycle many things. .... example plastic, paper and metal.
   a Of b From c For d To
5. Someone dropped a cigarette and .... the shop.
   a saved b burnt c killed d fed
6. The government is trying to .... the problem of water pollution.
   a damage b reuse c remind d solve
7. We could use the water from washing to .... plants. SB
   a water b cut c drink d end

8. Plastic bags can be recycled or ....
   a reread   b reused   c hurt   d deleted
9. Global Recycling Day is an important .... in March.   WB
   a event   b match   c movie   d song
10. The course .... to teach children how to speak English well.
   a cycles   b cleans   c aims   d gains
11. He has many hobbies .... reading, swimming and playing chess
   a containing   b consisting   c remaining   d including

Language Functions

Suggesting solutions to a problem   اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

Why don't we.................?	لما لا نقوم بـ (لعمل اقتراح) ....؟
How about...?	ماذا عن ...؟
Let's + inf	هيا بنا ....
That's an interesting idea!	انها فكرة رائعة!
We could...................	نستطيع أن ....
How can/could we.......................?	كيف نستطيع أن ....؟
The problem is	المشكلة هى ....
People could.....	تستطيع الناس أن ....

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue: SB

Aya : I'm very sad.
Reem : What is the problem?
Aya : The ❶.............................. is that we all use too much water.
Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water?
Aya : Well, ❷.............................. don't we try recycling water?
Reem : ❸.............................. could we do that?
Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the ❹.......
Reem : That's an interesting ❺.................... The plants would like that.
Aya : We can also take short showers.
Reem : I will try this.

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She walks as .... as she rides the bike.
   a slow b slower c slowest d slowly
2. Lots of sugar .... used to make black honey.
   a is b are c have d were
3. I .... him by the sea.
   a was seen b seen c saw d sees

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Osman talks as <u>quiet</u> as he sings. (........)
2. Lots of children are <u>teaching</u> in our school. (........)

Writing Skills

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 The place where you live

I live in Aswan. It is located in the south of Egypt. Its weather is warm all year round. It is known for its ancient monuments. Tourists come from all over the world to visit it. They visit Philea Temple in the Elephantine Island and the Aswan Museum. Many crops are grown in Aswan like sugar cane , wheat and dates.

In Aswan you can eat many kinds of fish. People in Aswan are very friendly. You can go there from Cairo by train or by plane. When you go by train, you can see beautiful views.

2 The importance of water

Water is very important. We cannot live without it. Water makes up more than half of our body weight. Water is necessary for drinking, bathing, cooking, cleaning, and washing and so on. We must save and recycle water.

People shouldn't waste water. Some people waste a lot of water by washing their cars. We should take a five-minute bath to save water. We should keep the lakes clean. People mustn't throw rubbish in rivers. They should help clean them all the time.

3 Helping the environment

Environment is the nature in which animals, plants and people live. It's very important to look after the environment. There are many ways to do that. We can plant trees. We can recycle rubbish. We mustn't throw waste in rivers. We should use green means of transport. We can live a happy life if we do these things.

We shouldn't throw plastic bottles or rubbish in rivers. We should use electric cars. Electric Cars are very useful to the environment. We should keep the environment clean to live a happy life.

Unit 6 Review

"Key Vocabulary Review"

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	climate change	تغير المناخ	the world	العالم
water pollution	تلوث المياه	canal	قناة مائية	recycling	اعادة التدوير
polluted	مُلوث	cotton	القطن	billion	مليار
drought	جفاف	mosque	مسجد	idea	فكرة
flood	فيضان	ship	سفينة	problem	مشكلة
rubbish	قمامة	sweets	حلوى	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
line graph	رسم بيانى خطى	(be) located	واقع فى مكان ما	riverbank	ضفة النهر
x-axis	محور السينات	camel	جمل	melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر
y-axis	محور الصادات	desert	صحراء	damage (d)	يتلف/يدمر
green	صديق البيئة	tourism	السياحة	remind (ed)	يُذِّكِر
environment	البيئة	pet	حيوان اليف	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
bar chart	رسم بيانى بالأعمدة				

Grammar Review

A Comparative and Superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- تنقسم الصفات الى قصيرة وطويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

long	طويل	hot	ساخن	high	عالي

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

beautiful	جميل	famous	مشهور	valuable	قيّم

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.
- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	**صفة + er + than** **ex.** Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	**the + صفة + est** **ex.** Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أكثر / أقل **more / less + صفة + than** **ex.** London is more modern than Cairo.	الأكثر / الأقل **The most / least + صفة** **ex.** New York is the most modern city.

• عند تساوى الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + (be) + as + صفة + as + اسم

ex. Hana is as clever as Fatma.

ملاحظات

١- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ كما هي:

Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
many	كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much	كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little	قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

Present simple passive المبني للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

(فاعل + by) + فعل الجملة فى التصريف الثالث P.P. + (am / is / are) + نائب فاعل

١- يأتى المفعول أول الجملة (أى يصبح نائب فاعل الجملة).

٢- نضع (am / is / are) قبل فعل الجملة الأساسى. ٣- يحول فعل الجملة الأساسى إلى التصريف الثالث.

٤- يمكن وضع الفاعل أخر الجملة مكان المفعول مسبوق بكلمة (by) ويمكن عدم ذكرهما.

Students do experiments. (active)

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

Experiments are done by students. (passive)

لنفى الجملة فى المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط:

التصريف الثالث + not + am - is - are + نائب فاعل

ex. Experiments aren't done by farmers.

للسؤال بمعنى (هل؟)

Am - Is - Are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث ...?

ex. Is Aswan visited by tourists? - Yes, it is. إثبات - No, it isn't. نفى

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

كلمة استفهام + am - is - are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث ...?

ex. How is water polluted?

General Exercises on Unit 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : ❶ .... is the problem with them?

Dina : The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila : How can we ❷ .... people using them?

Dina : Why ❸ .... we ask people to use them again?

Leila : How could we do that?

Dina : People ❹ .... take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : That's an ❺ .... idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

Dina : He will tell us some ideas to reuse them.

Leila : It'll be fun.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people say that recycling is not as important .... using less water. SB
   a as — b too — c so — d also
2. Ali says that football is not .... as handball. SB
   a difficult — b as difficult — c most difficult — d difficult than
3. We should clean the river because it is very .... SB
   a pollution — b pure — c polluted — d fresh
4. The Egyptians opened the Suez .... in 1869. SB
   a River — b Sea — c Lake — d Canal
5. .... is very important to Egypt. SB
   a Tourist — b Tourism — c Tour — d Pollution
6. Tourists bought wonderful .... from the market.
   a souvenirs — b ships — c planes — d buses
7. We need more rain or there might be a .... SB
   a storm — b drought — c flood — d climate change
8. A bike is not as .... as a plane. SB
   a faster — b fastest — c fast — d faster than
9. Alexandria is not as .... as Giza. SB
   a biggest — b bigger — c big — d so bigger

10. Our teacher speaks English as .... as he speaks Arabic.

a better b best c good d well

11. Which of these towns is .... on the north-west coast of Egypt?

a located b donated c hated d closed

12. .... reefs are sometimes damaged by boats.

a Car b Coral c Oral d Plural

13. Chairs and tables are .... by carpenters.

a make b making c made d makes

14. Fish is caught .... fishermen.

a to b of c by d after

15. Cairo is .... than Tanta.

a noisy b noisier c noisiest d more noisy

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Plastic pollution is **worst** now than it was before. SB (............)
2. The traffic in Cairo is **noisy** than Marsa Alam. SB (............)
3. The fish that we eat are **catched** in boats most mornings. WB (............)
4. The Pyramids **is** visited by thousands of people every day. WB (............)
5. Who is as **taller** as you in the class? WB (............)
6. Which school subject do you find as interesting **so** English? WB (............)

4 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

Writing skills يلا عنه في جزء

"The importance of water"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST 7 UNIT 6

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or

1. Tanta is located in the .... of Egypt.
   a north   b south   c east   d west
2. Lots of .... is grown in the area.
   a fruit   b vegetables   c cotton   d trees
3. Tanta is known for its delicious ....
   a cakes   b buns   c bread   d sweets
4. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi .... is visited by thousands of people every year.
   a mosque   b university   c school   d park

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader : Which city do you like?
Soad : I like Port Said.
Nader : ❶ .... is Part Said?
Soad : It is in the north-east of Egypt.
Nader : What is it ❷ .... for?
Soad : It is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
Nader : Can you ❸ .... a famous place in or near Part Said?
Soad : Yes, Port Said is connected ❹ .... Suez by the Suez Canal.
Nader : What do people do around it?
Soad : They ❺ .... many fish in the sea near it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water can be dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. **<u>It</u>** can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes rivers look **<u>horrible</u>** and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and

cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour f... to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. T... can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why is dirty water dangerous?

2- In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- ---------- cause pollution.

a Water and juice   b Metal and wood
c Smoke and gases   d Flowers and trees

4- The underlined word "**horrible**" means very ----------.

a good   b friendly   c pleasant   d bad

5- The underlined word "**It**" refers to ----------.

a rubbish   b dirty water   c environment   d water vapour

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air ---------- SB

   a pollution   b solution   c holiday   d conclusion

2. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/an ----------. SB

   a flood   b storm   c drought   d earthquake

3. When there is too much rain, there is often a ----------. SB

   a war   b flood   c drought   d match

4. When the planet gets warmer, it is called ---------- change. SB

   a climate   b pilot   c plate   d date

5. When ice is heated, it ----------. SB

   a freezes   b cools   c melts   d burns

6. Egypt is ---------- as Jordan.

   a big   b biggest   c as big   d bigger

7. This month was ---------- than last month because we had some big storms. SB

   a wettest   b wetter   c wet   d as wet

8. The museum is .... by lots of tourists every day.

a visiting b visit c visited d visits

9. How many subjects are .... in your school?

a teaching b taught c teaches d teach

10. Many ancient monuments are .... in Aswan.

a find b finding c found d finds

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Sport is **watch** by people around the world. WB (..............)
2. Mo Salah **known** by people everywhere. WB (..............)
3. Who in your family is not as **better** at English as you? WB (..............)
4. Is the weather this week as **hottest** as it was last week? WB (..............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

(Writing skills مجاب عنه في جزء)

"Helping the environment"

Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 116 - 117

"Key Vocabulary"

opening times	أوقات العمل	suddenly	...أة
(be) located	يقع / كائن فى (للمكان)	exactly	...لضبط
Corniche El Nil	كورنيش النيل	turtle	...لحفاة
further from	أبعد من	pink	...ون وردى / زهرى
the fourteenth century	القرن الرابع عشر	website	...رفع على الانترنت
take the sand off	يزيل الرمال	realise(d)	...درك
sunny day	يوم مشمس		

Tapescript SB page (64)

Mrs Saki : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

Mr El-Baz : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring[1] my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

Mrs Saki : Of course. We are open every day from 9 am to 2 pm and then 5 pm to 9 pm.

Mr El-Baz : Can I buy tickets at the museum?

Mrs Saki : Yes, certainly[2]. Or you can buy them online[3] before your visit.

Mr El-Baz : How much are the tickets?

Mrs Saki : They're 120 pounds for adults[4] and 60 pounds for children and students.

Mr El-Baz : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly[5]?

Mrs Saki : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche Al Nil[6].

Mr El-Baz : Thank you so much for your help!

Mrs Saki : You're welcome. Bye!

Arabic Meaning

١- أُحضر
٢- بالتأكيد
٣- على شبكة الانترنت
٤- البالغين
٥- بالضبط
٦- كورنيش النيل

Reading

SB page (64)



A trip to Luxor Museum By Hamid

Arabic Meaning

١- أبعد من
٢- ينتمي لـ
٣- القرن الرابع عشر

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from[1] my home than our school. We were travelling a long time! We arrived at 10.30 a.m. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to[2] rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century[3]. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.

Reading

WB page (116)



Arabic Meaning

١- تقع
٢- أدرك
٣- أزالوا الرمال

The city of Edfu, which is located[1] to the west of the River Nile, is known for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an arch in the sand. He realised[2] that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off[3] the temple and today, it is one of the biggest temples in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the temple, which is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists who go to the temple always remember this building.

TEST 8 Review B

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker went to Luxor Museum with his / her.............
   - a family
   - b class
   - c cousins
   - d friends
2. They arrived at the museum at .... a.m.
   - a 10.30
   - b 9.30
   - c 7.30
   - d 8.30
3. They saw some big.............
   - a tourists
   - b animals
   - c objects
   - d statues
4. The oldest objects in the museum were the.............
   - a statues
   - b walls
   - c tools
   - d objects

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader: Which city do you like?

Soad : I ① .... Port Said.

Nader: Where is Port Said?

Soad : It is in the northeast ② .... Egypt.

Nader: What is it ③ .... for?

Soad : It is known for its ships, which come and go from all ④ .... the world.

Nader: Can you name a famous place in or near Port Said?

Soad : Yes, Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal.

Nader: What do people do around it?

Soad : They ⑤ .... many fish in the sea near it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On Saturday, Judy will be 13 years old. Her parents are very happy and they are going to have a birthday party. The party is going to begin at noon on Saturday. They

invited their friends, neighbours and all their family members, so many people will be at the party. Judy will have so much fun!

Judy's dad is going to buy balloons. Judy's grandmother is going to bring ice-cream. Her aunt is going to bake a chocolate cake. Judy will love her cake! Her sister Salwa will take photos with her mobile at the party.

Judy's friends, cousins and neighbours will bring presents. She is going to open her presents after lunch. Then, everyone will eat cake and ice-cream. Judy is going to have a good birthday!

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What will happen on Saturday?

....

2- What is Judy's dad going to buy?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The underlined pronoun "**Her**" refers to..........

a Judy b the aunt c the mother d Salwa

4- Judy's grandmother's going to..........

a take photos b bring ice-cream c bake a cake d buy balloons

5- Judy will receive..........

a presents b cousins c books d ice-creams

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bowls in the museum were .... than the tools. SB

a the new b newest c newer d more new

2. While Mona was watching television, she.......... an idea. WB

a had b has c was having d to have

3. I ....my phone while I was texting my friend. WB

a found b won c washed d dropped

4. The train leaves at 9 tomorrow, so you ....be late. WB

a have to b mustn't c should d can

5. The boys .... first saw the turtle helped it.

a which   b where   c who   d whose

6. A/An .... is something which you use to buy things with.

a object   b arch   c museum   d coin

7. A/An .... school is a place where students live as well as study.

a interesting   b boarding   c boring   d losing

8. Tickets for adults are .... than tickets for children.

a more expensive   b expensive

c as expensive   d most expensive

9. A .... person is someone who cannot learn easily.

a clever   b intelligent   c healthy   d disabled

10. I .... remember to buy my friend a birthday present.

a mustn't   b has to   c shouldn't   d must

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Huda's grandparents arrived while she **put** her clothes away. WB (..........)
2. Playing sport is **good** for you than playing computer games. WB (..........)
3. You **should** eat too many sweets. They are bad for you. WB (..........)
4. The turtle **who** the boys helped walked to the sea. (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"How a school helped the community"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part 3

2nd Prep Booklet

كراسة التسميع والواجب المنزلى
والتمرينات والامتحانات

تحتوى على

- Dictation
- Homework Exercises

- SB / WB General Exercises

- Tests
  - End of Term Practice
  - General Tests
  - Azhar Tests

- خطوات المشروع البحثي لوزارة التربية والتعليم لعام 2020 - 2021

- Listening material

تمنياتنا بالتوفيق لأبنائنا الطلاب

Dictation and Homework Exercises

"Unit 1 Coming home"

Lessons 1 & 2

عمارة سكنية	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء ....
أبدًا	يتناول الغداء فى المدرسة ....
يرسل رسالة نصية لـ / رسالة نصية	يساعد فى إعداد العشاء ....
روتين (نظام متكرر)	يستمع إلى الموسيقى ....
يمارس الرياضة	دائمًا ....
يقرأ على الأريكة	يوم دراسى ....
عادة	مادة دراسية ....
اهتمامات	لعبة الشطرنج ....
مخبز	وقت الفراغ ....
يُفضل	غالبًا ....
أحيانًا	مقابلة شخصية ....
أريكة (كنبة)	هواية ....
يومىّ	طريق ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- **A:** How ----------- does Maha get up early? **B:** Always.
a much b often c many d much

2- Gamila never ----------- music, but today she is listening to music with us.
a likes b like c liking d is liking

3- All teachers like Samar because she is ----------- late.
a never b always c usually d does

4- The ----------- over there is wide enough for three people to sit on.
a chair b shelf c armchair d sofa

5- A: Can we go to the zoo today? B: Yes, sure. It is open ....

a dairy b daily c rarely d quickly

6- Mr Hossam sometimes listens to music on his .... home.

a way b weigh c weight d journey

7- I .... my friend to tell him about my birthday party.

a ordered b hurt c listened d texted

8- My Ali lives in a big .... of flats near the main road.

a block b hut c room d bathroom

9- How often do you .... lunch at school?

a listen b read c help d have

10- My dad usually .... on the sofa over there.

a reads b builds c damages d helps

11- Karim wants to lose weight. That's why he is .... sports.

a making b doing c testing d helping

12- Mariam doesn't ....in Giza, she lives in Tanta.

a lives b live c living d lived

13- Ali is an excellent architect. He .... makes mistakes in his designs.

a never b always c usually d does

14- Running is an important part of my daily ....

a work b routine c flat d building

15- John isn't lazy. He often .... very hard.

a works b work c working d is working

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What <u>are</u> you usually do at weekends? (..........)

2- We <u>never</u> wear warm clothes when it is very cold. (..........)

3- **A:** <u>When</u> do you go sailing? **B:** Every week. (..........)

4- **A:** What does your father <u>doing</u>? **B:** He is a doctor. (..........)

5- What time <u>is</u> Naglaa arrive at work every day? (..........)

6- Dad always <u>go</u> to bed before ten. (..........)

7- I don't like sugar. I <u>always</u> put sugar in my tea. (..........)

Lessons 3 & 4

صنبور (حنفية)	....	جذّاب / جميل	....
يُسمى - يُدعى	....	قريب (من)	....
ينتقل	....	الريف	....
يتذكر	....	فقير	....
خط سكة حديد	....	سجن	....
يستعير	....	مغامرة	....
لعب الأدوار (إسم لعبة)	....	نموذجى (معتاد)	....
فظيع - بشع	....	قرية	....
كبير	....	يُطعم	....
فيما بعد	....	يتقاسم - يشارك	....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I'm sure Ahmed lives somewhere .... here. He always comes on foot.
a far b wide c deep d near

2- Your new villa is really .... All of us admired it so much.
a terrible b bad c attractive d narrow

3- New York is a .... city. Millions of people live there.
a small b little c large d tiny

4- Sara left her .... in the Al Fayoum and went to live in Cairo in 2018.
a village b library c temple d museum

5- I couldn't sleep yesterday because there was a .... noise next door.
a nice b quiet c calm d terrible

6- That railway .... goes from Tanta to Cairo.
a street b line c city d village

7- Habiba's family were very .... so they couldn't buy her new clothes.
a rich b strong c powerful d poor

8- Newspapers say that three thieves escaped from .... yesterday.
a school b university c prison d desert

9- I don't have any pens. Will you .... your pens with me?
a choose b share c sell d offer

10- .... I call again on Thursday?
a Have b Do c Shall d Am

11- "............ you help me with my computer problem?"

a Have b Can c Am d Is

12- .... you got a car?

a Do b Have c Can d Shall

13- .... I come to the office at six?

a Has b Shall c Are d Am

14- A: Who .... give me some advice?
B: Mr Hassan.

a has b can c have d is

15- .... I carry your bag?

a Has b Shall c Have d Am

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What **have** we do with this problem? (..............)
2- **Can** you got a brother? Yes, I have. (..............)
3- Have Ali and George **get** many computer games? (..............)
4- Where **have** I go if I need help? (..............)
5- **Shall** you spell the word "spaghetti"? (..............)
6- **Have** Yasmin got a blue school bag? (..............)
7- **Have** I get a pizza for dinner tonight? (..............)

Lessons 5 & 6

كرسى بمسندين	دولاب (الملابس) ....
رف للكتب	وسادة (مخدة) ....
مرآة	خزانة ذات أدراج ....
تحت	محمية طبيعية ....
أمام - فى مقابل	أمام ....
على	أباچورة / مصباح ....
فى - داخل	حوض ....
بجوار	سجادة ....
خلف	أريكة (كنبة) ....
ستائر	صديق المراسلة ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mahmoud : How many people are in your family?

Ahmad : ❶ .... my parents, my sister, me and my brother.

Mahmoud : ❷ .... you live in Cairo?

Ahmad : Yes, I do.

Mahmoud : ❸ .... does your father do?

Ahmad : He's a seller.

Mahmoud : Where does he work?

Ahmad : He ❹ .... in a shop.

Mahmoud : What does your mother do?

Ahmad : ❺ .... is a nurse.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Your room has a large .... where you can wash your hands and face.
  a) mirror b) basin c) basket d) curtain

2- **A:** Where can I keep my clothes? **B:** In the .... next to the curtains.
  a) carpet b) ward c) word d) wardrobe

3- The floor was covered in a big ....
  a) desk b) carpet c) mirror d) curtain

4- Girls usually spend much time in front of.......... !
  a) mirrors b) carpets c) curtains d) chests

5- A .... of drawers is a piece of furniture used for keeping things.
  a) chair b) chest c) rest d) test

6- Doaa opened the .... to let light come into the room.
  a) mirrors b) basins c) armchairs d) curtains

7- You can keep your books on that low ....
  a) bookshop b) armchair c) bookshelf d) curtain

8- It was too dark when I switched the .... off.
  a) lamp b) lamb c) camp d) cupboard

9- I couldn't see the boy who sat .... the sofa.
  a) in front b) behind c) next d) to

10- The little girl sat next .... her mother.
  a) of b) to c) in d) on

Unit 2 "How are you feeling?"

Lessons ① & ②

عنبر (فى مستشفى)	ممرضة ....
دهان المطبخ	ضابط شرطة ....
يتطلع إلى	عامل فى محل ....
يُصلح	الخياطة ....
يتواصل	عامل مركز اتصالات ....
فن خط اليد	مهندس كمبيوتر ....
لغة الاشارة	يُعد العشاء ....
كسول	بائع طعام متجول ....
يتأكد	ينظف المنزل ....
يركن (مَركَبة)	كشك لبيع الطعام ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A/An .... prepares food for people to eat.
- a) nurse
- b) shop worker
- c) street-food seller
- d) computer engineer

2- Can I borrow your .... machine to make some clothes?
- a) painting b) drawing c) sewing d) hunting

3- The teacher was angry with Maha as she was ....
- a) active b) lazy c) polite d) clever

4- Hossam is studying .... to make his handwriting better.
- a) swimming b) sign language c) calligraphy d) photography

5- A .... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
- a) street-food seller
- b) computer engineer
- c) police officer
- d) shop worker

6- You must .... your car before you travel to Alex.
- a) share b) repair c) buy d) call

7- Salma used .... to tell the deaf woman what happened.
- a) sign language b) studying c) running d) parking

8- I can't meet you now. I am .... the house with mum.
- a) making b) staying c) spending d) cleaning

9- There were a lot of .... at the clinic yesterday.
a farms b patients c hospitals d players

10- You can't talk to Ahmed now. He .... a shower.
a has b is having c having d have

11- My dad is an engineer but he .... at the moment.
a doesn't work b isn't working
c don't work d aren't working

12- Zeinab wants to work in Italy, so she .... Italian these days.
a learn b learns c is learning d learning

13- The boys are playing tennis in the playground ....
a yesterday b last week c now d ago

14- I .... an interesting book at the moment.
a read b read c is reading d am reading

15- I .... for my mum. Do you know where she is?
a look b looking c am looking d looks

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Is Amgad **work** this week?' 'No, he's on holiday.'
2- I **am getting** up at 8 o'clock every morning
3- The swimming pool **is opening** at 9 o'clock every day.
4- I'm very busy. I **paint** the kitchen.
5- What time **are** the banks close in Britain?
6- I **live** with some friends until I find a flat.
7- This coat **is feeling** nice.

(..........)
(..........)
(..........)
(..........)
(..........)
(..........)
(..........)
(..........)

Lesson 3

ميناء (شحن وتفريغ)	حقيبة تسوق ....
حفل زفاف	حديقة الأزهر ....
حقيبة سفر	مخطط ....
حشد من الناس	يخمّن ....
صخور	مطار ....
يستقل طائرة	يلتقط صورة سيلفى ....
تل	ملعب- فناء ....
يعامل	جلد - بشرة ....
لأول مرة	كالمعتاد ....
ضيف	يصعد طائرة ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When will the plane land at Cairo International .... ?
a Village b Airport c School d University

2- I invited all my friends to my .... party.
a weeding b meeting c wedding d painting

3- I have a big .... that I use for carrying my clothes when I travel.
a suitcase b bookcase c suit d umbrella

4- The .... came to the party at six and left it at half past ten.
a customers b engineers c officers d guests

5- Mr Ali always .... people with respect. He is a good man.
a guesses b treats c waits d sews

6- I always use my mobile phone to .... a selfie.
a give b take c marry d catch

7- I visited the Pyramids in Giza .... the first time in 2017.
a in b off c out d for

8- Omar works .... to get enough money to live.
a hard b hardly c badly d carelessly

9- Osama is a good singer. He sings ....
a well b good c bad d badly

10- Mr Alaa is very old. He always walks ....
a slow b slowly c quick d quickly

11- I went out of the children's room .... because they were asleep.
a quiet b quietly c noisy d careful

12- The bell rang ....
a loud b sad c loudly d sadly

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- She took care of her children **good**. (..........)

2- **A:** **Who** does Ali speak? **B:** Slowly. (..........)

3- The balloon went **highly** in the air. (..........)

4- He failed the exam because he answered **well**. (..........)

5- He shouted at me **angry**. (..........)

6- The boy smiled **happy** when he saw his friends. (..........)

7- Yesterday was too long. The time passed very **slow**. (..........)

Lessons 4 , 5 & 6

صحراء	بمفرده ....
مدرب	الطبيعة ....
إذهب للخارج	فصل دراسى ....
ممتن - شاكر	طبيعى / معتاد ....
مذهل	شخص مراهق ....
يتذكر	يتحسن ....
يكوّن صداقات	مسرور بخصوص ....
تهانئى على	لديه مقابلة شخصية ....
يذهب فى رحلة	يذهب للإبحار ....
خمن ما هى؟	قلق بخصوص ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : Hi Habiba, How are things?

Habiba : Hello Omar! Fine thanks. I passed my English exam!

Hana : Congratulations! I'm so ❶ .... for you.

Omar : Thanks. What ❷ .... you?

Habiba : I passed my English, ❸ ....

Omar : Well ❹ .... When is the science exam?

Habiba : It is next Monday.

Omar : I am studying ❺ .... for it.

Habiba : Me, too.

Omar : I hope it will be easy.

Habiba : Me, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I was really .... that Mr Ali helped me with my problems.

a grateful b great c angry d careless

2- The new car looks like any .... car, but it has a special engine.

a amazed b bored c normal d lonely

3- Nearly half of the .... in my school listen to pop music.

a waiters b buyers c engineers d teenagers

4- Ali has a lot of friends. He is never ....

a full b careless c alone d friendly

5- When he took the medicine, he .... better.

a came b got c arrived d made

6- Why don't we go .... next Monday?

a sail b sailor c sailing d sailed

7- Congratulations .... passing you exams with high marks.

a on b at c in d out

8- I have some great news. .... what! I've passed my maths exam.

a Forget b Guess c Remind d Remember

9- I'm really .... about your exam results. Well done!

a sad b nervous c pleased d worried

10- A: I'm feeling bored with staying at home? B: Why don't you go ....?

a inside b outside c cooking d sleeping

"Unit 3 Great jobs"

Lessons ① & ②

أنثى / مؤنث ______	مشاكل في القلب ______
يفوز ______	مرمى / هدف ______
فريق الناشئين ______	الطب / دواء ______
كبير فى السن / راشد ______	فاعل خير (من يقوم بعمل الخير) ______
الفريق الأول ______	عالِم ______
مسابقة ______	طبيب جرّاح ______
المباراة النهائية ______	مدرب رياضى ______
تجربة عملية ______	لعبة كرة اليد ______
مغامرة ______	بطل ______
يهاجم ______	ناشىء / مبتدىء ______

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... you see the film about the earthquake on TV last night?
a Did b Do c Will d Were

2- Last year, I .... to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.
a to go b went c go d was going

3- Which team .... the match yesterday?
a is winning b winning c won d wins

4- He .... Aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.
a met b was meeting c meets d will meet

5- This player plays for the .... team, he is still young.
a senior b great c junior d master

6- Dalia came first in the .... of singing.
a competition b station c communication d action

7- A clever .... helped in a charity for ill children.
a guide b surgeon c farmer d vet

8- Were you born .... a rich family?
a into b on c about d at

9- A .... worker helps people or animals that need help.
a factory b charity c street d farm

10- You should do exercise under a good sports ....
a teacher b officer c patient d coach

11- .... work day and night to find a medicine for Corona Virus.
a Surgeons b Scientists c Seniors d Heroes

12- Would you like to see the .... match in the stadium? I have tickets.
a final b fun c total d signal

13- This competition is held for .... teams only.
a quiet b senior c longer d corner

14- I was very happy when I .... that prize from my teacher.
a getting b to get c got d get

15- This great charity helps children .... heart problems.
a with b in c without d for

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- The assistants in the shop <u>was</u> helpful. (........)

2- We <u>decide</u> to go for a walk because the weather was fine. (........)

3- Hala <u>wears</u> a beautiful dress yesterday. (........)

4- Where did you <u>went</u> last night? (........)

5- She **doesn't** sleep because she had a lot of work. (..............)
6- The story which I **reads** yesterday was nice. (..............)
7- We **have** lunch at a restaurant. The food was very good. (..............)

Lessons ③ & ④

جسم	الرئتان ....
يستمتع بـ	المعدة ....
يبدأ	المخ ....
جمعية خيرية / أعمال خيرية	العينان ....
الريف	الفم ....
حالة طوارىء	يجرح / يقطع ....
كارثة طبيعية	يضخ ....
مرعب / مخيف	متطوع ....
فخور	الجد الأكبر ....
القلب	الجدة الكبرى ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We are very .... of our ancient Egyptian history.
a proud b bored c pride d interested

2- I .... like tennis, but now I love it.
a used to b don't use to c didn't use to d use to

3- What did you .... to learn at primary school? WB
a used b using c to use d use

4- Don't call the police unless it's a real ....
a emergency b charity c infection d history

5- The .... is very green in spring.
a desert b century c countryside d court

6- This .... aims to help old people.
a disaster b war c emergency d charity

7- The .... is in your head.
a brain b heart c stomach d lung

8- This medicine is effective to cure stomach ....
a pump b pollution c disaster d infection

9- She .... the meat into small pieces.

a put b shot c cut d hurt

10- My sister .... wear a hat when she was five.

a used to b uses to c is used to d using to

11- I .... use to like salad when I was younger, but I love it now.

a don't b haven't c am not d didn't

12- A/An .... is someone who works for no money to help people. SB

a volunteer b engineer c farmer d driver

13- This football has no air inside it. I need a/an .... to fill it. WB

a bell b bomb c camp d pump

14- The earthquake was the second natural .... in the city this year. WB

a advice b disaster c poster d environment

15- How did people .... to communicate in the past?

a used b using c use d to use

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We **use** to go abroad every year. (..............)

2- **Do** people use to fight with swords in the past? (..............)

3- Life isn't what it used to **been** in the past. (..............)

4- I **wasn't** use to eat fish but I do now. (..............)

5- My grandmother **always is used** to tell us bedtime stories. (..............)

6- When did you **used** to go for fun when you were a child? (..............)

7- People used to **paying** in gold many years ago. (..............)

Lessons 5 & 6

عمال نظافة الشوارع	....	متأكد	....
مديرة	....	بطولي	....
مرعوب	....	عمال جمع القمامة	....
التعليم	....	ممرضة	....
كابتن (قائد فريق)	....	رجل الإطفاء	....
الفن / الرسم	....	رائع	....
لوحة فنية	....	تمثال	....
يستمر	....	بطولة	....
يوافق	....	مجتمع	....
يجمع	....	سبب / مبرر	....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Esraa : Did you read about ancient Egyptian doctors?

Amal : Yes, I know how ancient Egyptian doctors helped their ❶ ....

Esraa : How do scientists know ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients?

Amal : Because they ❷ .... down their ideas thousands of years ago.

Esraa : What did they ❸ .... to help them?

Amal : Doctors used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

Esraa : Did they understand everything about how the heart works?

Amal : Yes, they did.

Esraa : What ❹ .... did they know?

Amal : They also knew how to mend ❺ .... bones and sew cuts.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We should help street .... by throwing rubbish into bins.
a collectors b walkers c cars d cleaners

2- The businessman asked to meet the bank ....
a driver b manager c rider d collector

3- I was .... of the big dog.
a scary b interested c angry d scared

4- Are you .... that you can answer this question?
a able b afraid c sure d sad

5- The captain's .... effort helped save the ship from sinking.
a heroic b lazy c useless d comic

6- .... collectors work hard to keep the city clean.
a Street b Stamp c Rubbish d Money

7- Parents always .... their children first and do their best for them.
a put b throw c cut d clean

8- Who is the person standing ....?
a they're b their c they are d there

9- My cat knows .... way home.
a its b it is c it's d it

10- What's the .... you're leaving your new job, Sameh?
a season b pity c reason d question

Unit 4 Into the past

Lessons 1 & 2

سجل	مذهل
أثري (قديم جداً)	قلعة
تاريخي	مسجد
مرشد	هرم
منظر	قنطرة
بطل	أطلال (بقايا)
مفيد	استاد
ممل	تمثال
بالي / مدمر	معبد
يلمس	مسرح
يحمي	

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The .... in the entrance of the house is built with brick.
a) arch b) park c) ruin d) view

2- Tourists from China need a .... to show them around the museum.
a) statue b) ticket c) race d) guide

3- The waterfalls here are a really .... sight.
a) helpful b) expensive c) awesome d) difficult

4- You .... be noisy in class.
a) must b) mustn't c) can d) will

5- We should take more care of our .... buildings.
a) historic b) careful c) windy d) useless

6- We were most impressed by the .... of an ancient building.
a) bins b) tickets c) races d) ruins

7- You .... have a shower before you swim.
a) must b) can't c) mustn't d) aren't

8- The ancient Egyptians used to pray in ....
a) theatres b) stadiums c) walls d) temples

9- We .... help the government protect the historic places.
a) can't b) must c) mustn't d) are

10- Workers usually wear helmets to .... their heads.

a protect b hurt c clear d collect

11- You work with .... speed.

a historic b ancient c amazing d interested

12- Students .... get 30 out of 50 to pass the test.

a must b mustn't c has d don't

13- Thousands of people attended the final in the ....

a castle b stadium c temple d museum

14- You .... run near the pool. SB

a must b are c should d mustn't

15- Don't .... the door; the paint is wet.

a touch b teach c match d watch

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- You **must** say things which people don't like. (..............)

2- Thieves **mustn't** go to prison, they are dangerous. (..............)

3- People who are on a diet **must** have chocolate. (..............)

4- Leila **must** touch the hot pan, she may burn her hand. (..............)

5- You **mustn't** follow the school rules. (..............)

6- The kids **must** climb that high wall, they may hurt themselves. (..............)

7- That car is mine; you **must** use it without asking me. (..............)

Lessons 3 & 4

مرآة	سلطانية ....
خشب	وعاء / قدر ....
تصميم – يصمم	ثلاجة ....
مفتوح – يفتح	أداة ....
شيء	عملة معدنية ....
يبعد	عُقد ....
صلصال	خاتم ....
حشرة	تمثال / نموذج ....
ورق البردى	قناع ....
ما عدا	سعر ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A/An .... is jewellery you wear around your neck.
a ring b scarf c necklace d earring

2- Shaimaa is looking at herself in the ....
a mirror b magazine c floor d paint

3- Look, there's a strange .... in the sky!
a subject b tool c price d object

4- I met my friend Ahmad while I .... to school.
a was walking b walked c walk d am walking

5- Keep .... from the pool; you might fall.
a in b behind c away d over

6- This statue was made of ....
a wind b clay c ingredient d paint

7- Don't put the flowers in that .... ; it is broken.
a vase b tool c coin d ring

8- A .... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.
a necklace b pool c tool d jewellery

9- When I returned home yesterday, mum .... lunch.
a cooks b is cooking c was cooking d will cook

10- The ancient Egyptians wrote on ....
a papyrus b insects c magazines d recipes

11- I .... an accident when I was walking to school.
a see b was seeing c will see d saw

12- Lots of birds .... in the sky when we were sitting down on the beach.
a flies b were flying c fly d are flying

13- You'll frighten the baby wearing that ....
a mask b bowl c figure d mirror

14- The doorbell rang just as I .... my meal.
a had b have c was having d am having

15- A/An .... bit me on the arm.
a necklace b insect c tool d figure

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- She **weren't** eating a sandwich when her father took a picture. (..........)

2- Was it **rained** when the match started? (..........)

3- The plane **is flying** from Cairo to Alexandria at nine o'clock yesterday. (..........)

4- What was mum **done** in the kitchen at 5 o'clock? (..............)
5- A boy was painting a picture while his sister **sang** a song. (..............)
6- Were you **have** lunch when Sarah phoned? (..............)
7- What **did** Omar doing between ten and eleven o'clock? (..............)

Lessons ⑤ & ⑥

شركات تنظيم الإجازات	السياحة ....
ربما	سائح ....
يتلف	شركة ....
يوافق	أماكن تاريخية ....
يزن	التلوث ....
مناظرة	البيئة ....
مزدحم	منطقة ....
عاصفة	السكان المحليين ....
زبون	تقرير ....
حاكم	عَبْر ....

Homework Exercises — Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Student : Where are the Stone Circles of Senegambia?

Teacher : In Senegal and Gambia.

Student : How ❶ .... stone circles are there?

Teacher : There are more than 1,000 stone circles.

Student : Why are the stone circles ❷ ....?

Teacher : Because they tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

Student : How ❸ .... are the stone circles?

Teacher : The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old.

Student : Can ❹ .... visit them?

Teacher : Yes, tourists can visit them, but they must not ❺ .... them.

2 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The fire .... the whole building.
a damaged b decided c managed d built

2- The problem of .... in the city cannot be solved.
a century b history c pollution d painting

3- .... you are right and I am wrong.
a May b Maybe c Must be d Should

4- Recycling is important to help protect our ....
a pollution b education c environment d holiday

5- I .... sixty-four kilograms.
a weigh b wait c wear d wave

6- The hotel is built in the .... part of the city.
a moral b total c historic d careless

7- How much did you pay .... the tickets?
a to b of c from d for

8- Parents and teachers should educate their children to .... well.
a behave b wave c shout d hit

9- Student mustn't .... rubbish in the playground.
a drive b drop c dry d dare

10- Regular exercise is good .... the heart.
a on b to c at d for

"Unit 5 Helping you, helping me"

Lessons ① & ②

.... يرتب	.... مصعد (أسانسير)
.... يغسل الاوانى	.... فوضوى (غير منظم)
.... يخرج القمامة	.... ابتسامة/يبتسم
.... يطهو/يطبخ	.... عشوائى
.... يعتنى بـ	.... غريب (غرباء)
.... يضع الملابس فى مكانها المعتاد	.... رائع
.... ابعد	.... طيبة/عطف
.... وجبة خفيفة	.... ينفق أموال على
.... يمارس	.... كرسى متحرك
	.... لاعب كرة قدم

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We never order food because mum .... delicious food.
a swims b drives c cooks d dives

2- I look .... my brother when my parents aren't at home.
a after b up c down d away

3- Mo'men always has a big .... on his face.
a smell b small c smelt d smile

4- How much money do you .... on snacks each week?
a do b spend c go d speak

5- My sister tidies .... the house before mum gets home.
a up b to c off d on

6- Do you .... it easy or difficult to make friends?
a kind b find c mind d wind

7- A .... act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone for no reason.
a kingdom b random c wisdom d freedom

8- You should .... healthy food.
a eat b eating c ate d eats

9- Mariam .... stay up too late at night.
a isn't b must c should d shouldn't

10- They .... have to study these lessons. They studied them before.
a don't b shouldn't c mustn't d isn't

11- You .... always make a revision timetable.
a should b shouldn't c mustn't d are

12- People .... waste water.
a can b must c should d shouldn't

13- Workers have to .... a uniform at the factory.
a wearing b wears c wore d wear

14- The train leaves early tomorrow morning, so Hoda .... get up at 5 a.m.!
a have to b have c has to d has

15- I .... do my homework at home.
a have to b have c has to d has

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We <u>shouldn't</u> always be polite. (..............)
2- You shouldn't <u>to eat</u> unhealthy food. (..............)
3- You <u>should to</u> study hard. (..............)
4- You <u>shouldn't</u> always listen to the teacher in the classroom. (..............)
5- Does Muhammad <u>has</u> to buy a car? (..............)

6- Mustafa **have** to wear his uniform at school. (..........)
7- What do you **has** to do at the weekend? (..........)
8- Students have to **done** exams at school. (..........)

Lessons 3 & 4

.... خاص / مميز	.... يتبرع
.... ناظر المدرسة	.... يتصرف / يسلك
.... مدرسة داخلية	.... يلتقط
.... معاق	.... قاسى
.... مجتمع محلى (صغير)	.... خادم / خادمة
.... غريب	.... حذاء رياضى
.... شخص رياضى	.... متطوع
.... يضل الطريق	.... أميرة
.... متسول	.... كريم
.... يُطعم	.... خباز
.... مهذب مع	

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I work for a .... which looks after poor and sick people.
 a club b zoo c charity d bank

2- That's the horse .... won the race.
 a which b who c where d whose

3- I often see a .... in the street where I work. She usually asks for money.
 a beggar b princess c queen d businesswomen

4- We help to .... the animals and look after them.
 a eat b kill c cut d feed

5- We should .... up the rubbish to make our school clean.
 a look b pick c take d wake

6- Taqwa goes to the .... to buy some bread.
 a baker's b doctor's c vet's d chemist's

7- Don't be .... to other people. It's a bad act.
 a good b cruel c nice d cute

8- Muhammad Salah is the player .... scores many goals.
a where b when c which d who

9- English is the subject .... I like most.
a which b where c who d when

10- That is the club .... I play football.
a who b which c what d where

11- Football is a sport .... I'm good at.
a who b that c where d what

12- This is the scientist .... won the prize.
a which b where c who d when

13- Cairo is the city .... I live.
a when b that c where d who

14- This is the house .... I was born.
a who b where c when d which

15- People .... money to the charity to buy food for the poor.
a stay b donate c play d skate

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Elham is the woman **which** bought our old car. (..............)
2- That's the shop **when** Magda bought her dress. (..............)
3- This is the factory **which** my father works. (..............)
4- Ahmad is the man **which** can swim really fast. (..............)
5- I lost the toy **who** my my father bought yesterday. (..............)
6- This is the new story **what** I read last week. (..............)
7- Alexandria is the city **when** there is a famous castle. (..............)
8- We bought a flat **who** is near the school. (..............)

Lessons 5 & 6

بعد ذلك....................	تبرع....................
أخيراً....................	مدونة على الانترنت....................
يساعد....................	أولاً....................
يتقاسم / يشارك....................	ثانيًا....................
كانتين....................	ثم / بعد ذلك....................
سيدة أعمال....................	الاعرض....................
جواز سفر....................	مادة الجغرافيا....................
مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي....................	تقريبا....................
ألف....................	معمل....................
مليون....................	تمطر ثلج....................

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Maya : I am reading a story called A Little Princess.
Nada : That story was fantastic.
Maya : When ❶ .... Sara become a servant?
Nada : After her father died.
Maya : ❷ .... was Sara kind and polite to everyone?
Nada : Because she decided to behave like a real ❸ ....
Maya : Why was Miss Minchin ❹ .... to Sara?
Nada : Miss Minchin was cruel to Sara because she had no money.
Maya : What was the ❺ .... surprised about?
Nada : When the baker saw Sara give the girl most of her cakes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The .... thing is to help as many people as possible.
a bad b important c ugly d useless

2- We .... swimming last week.
a went b did c took d had

3- **A:** How did you .... after scoring a goal? **B:** I was happy.
a feel b fill c fall d fail

4- It's good to .... your things with your brothers or sisters.
a break b lose c share d wait

5- That story was ....! I read it many times.
a boring b bad c cruel d fantastic

6- Last Friday, I .... to help everyone in my family.
a decided b took c made d played

7- I made my mother breakfast. She was .... because she usually makes it!
a angry b surprised c hungry d cruel

8- The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the widest bridge .... the world.
a in b on c under d from

9- If you want to study English, ... study the alphabet.
a finally b after that c first d end

10- Princess Fareeda El-Sadat donated two .... pounds to charities in the city.
a a million b millions c million d the million

Unit 6 Different environments

Lessons 1 & 2

تلوث الهواء		محور السينات	
تلوث المياه		محور الصادات	
جفاف		صديق البيئة	
فيضان		البيئة	
قمامة		رسم بيانى بالاعمدة	
مُلَوث		تغير المناخ	
رسم بيانى خطى		يذوب / ينصهر	
مريح		قطار / أتوبيس كهربى	
جذاب		عرض تقديمى	
درجة الحرارة		حرائق	

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- There are a lot of cars in the city so the .... is very bad.
a flood b drought c pollution d graph

2- When it is difficult to find water, it means there is a/an ....
a rain b flood c drought d earthquake

3- There is a .... on the road next to the river, so cars cannot go along it.
a flood b drought c soil d place

4- Planting trees is good for the ....
a environment b pollution c drought d flood

5- We can study the x-axis and the y-axis in line ....
a flood b graphs c pollution d environment

6- There is a lot of rubbish in the river. This is called .... pollution.
a drought b flood c air d water

7- Climate .... is a big problem all over the world.
a change b environment c drought d flood

8- The TV is as .... a computer.
a more expensive b expensive as c expensive d most expensive

9- The train is .... comfortable than the bus.
a least b more c most d fewer

10- Do you think that green energy is as .... recycling?

a important as b important c the important d more important

11- The turtle is slower .... the lizard.

a the b than c this d that

12- Fruit is as .... vegetables.

a healthy b healthier c healthiest d healthy as

13- Winter is the .... rainy season.

a least b most c more d less

14- Life in a village is .... than life in a city.

a slow b slowest c slower d the slower

15- The whale is .... biggest animal in the world.

a has b not c than d the

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Life in the country is **quietest** than life in the city. (..........)

2- A bus isn't as fast **than** a train. (..........)

3- Mo'men plays chess as **good** as Hossam. (..........)

4- The city is noisier **that** the countryside. (..........)

5- This is the **more** beautiful building in the city. (..........)

6- Bikes are **slowest** than cars. (..........)

7- Nasser is the **taller** in our family. (..........)

8- Europe isn't **large** as Africa. (..........)

Lessons 3 & 4

الحياة البرية	قناة مائية ....
صحراء	قطن ....
السياحة	مسجد ....
حيوان الفيل	سفينة ....
العالم	حلوى ....
يتلف / يدمر	واقع (موجود) فى مكان ما ....
يحدد موقع	جمل ....
شمال شرق	محميات طبيعية ....
نفخ	مصادر الطاقة صديقة البيئة ....
ساحل البحر الأحمر	يصلى ....

Homework Exercises Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Alexandria is .... in the north of Egypt.
a local b lies c located d lie

2- Where is .... grown?
a fish b cotton c ship d sweet

3- Egypt is visited by tourists from around the ....
a land b ground c soil d world

4- Cairo is my .... city.
a block b home c house d flat

5- A lot of children like to eat ....
a bugs b sweets c bees d ants

6- The earthquake .... many houses in Egypt in 1992.
a damaged b protected c respected d recycled

7- The .... is a big animal that lives in the desert.
a dolphin b shark c whale d camel

8- The Holy Mosque in Mecca .... by millions of people every year.
a visits b visiting c is visited d visit

9- English .... around the world.
a are spoken b is spoken c be spoken d being spoken

10- Mobile phones .... sold everywhere.
a is b be c are d was

11- Bread .... at a bakery.
a is made b make c making d makes

12- My bedroom .... by my mother.
a is cleaning b is cleaned c cleans d cleaned

13- A lot of rubbish is .... by people all over the world.
a are produced b produced c is produced d producing

14- How are cakes ....?
a make b makes c making d made

15- Tourists are .... how to look after the environment.
a taught b teaching c teach d teaches

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Our homework <u>check</u> by the teacher. (..............)

2- When are the trees <u>plant</u>? (..............)

3- How <u>is</u> farms watered? (..............)

4- Meals **cooks** by my mother every day. (..........
5- Plastic is **recycle** in many countries. (..........
6- Fish is **catch** every day. (..........
7- Oranges are **grow** in hot countries. (..........
8- Eggs **is cooked** in a big pan. (..........

Lessons 5 & 6

هدايا تذكارية	....	اعادة التدوير	....
ضفة النهر	....	مليار	....
يُذكر	....	التغير المناخى	....
يعيد تدوير	....	فكرة	....
وسط المدينة	....	مشكلة	....
دخان / عادم	....	ركوب الدرجات	....
أهمية	....	القيادة	....
غاز	....	يُحسن	....
طن	....	على سبيل المثال	....
الابحار	....	حلول ممكنة	....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 **Complete the following dialogue:**

Reham : I know a city called Sidi Bou Said. Do you know it?
Ghada : No. Where is it located?
Reham : It is (1) .... in the north of Tunisia.
Ghada : What is this (2) .... known for?
Reham : People know its blue and white buildings.
Ghada : (3) .... is sold there?
Reham : People sell wonderful souvenirs in the (4) ....
Ghada : What is (5) .... by tourists there?
Reham : Museums.
Ghada : I think it's a nice place to visit.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The door is made .... wood.

a at b by c of d In

2- .... sinks in water.

a Metal b Wood c Plastic d Snow

3- Farmers always .... their farms.

a cycle b sail c drive d water

4- There are over seven .... people live all over the world.

a billions b billion c the billion d a billion

5- In the future, most countries hope to .... rubbish.

a sail b water c recycle d cycle

6- We bought .... to remember the places we visited.

a farms b souvenirs c problems d ideas

7- **A:** What is the ....? **B:** I hurt my leg.

a idea b metal c country d problem

8- I have a good .... What about travelling to Alex?

a problem b idea c rubbish d water

9- .... old things is useful for all of us.

a Recycling b Cycling c Driving d Sailing

10- Global Recycling Day is an event that aims to .... people of the importance of recycling things.

a remember b forget c remind d lose

Language Functions Review

الوظائف اللغوية التي وردت بالمنهج

Unit 1

Types of questions

يوجد في اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

1 Yes / No Questions

هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل: (be / do / have / will / can) ونجيب عليها بـ (Yes) أو (No)

ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

2 Wh- Questions

هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What class	ما الصف الدراسي
Where	أين (للمكان)	What time	ما الوقت
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What colour	ما لون
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة / كم طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات

تذكر الآتي:

- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلي:

(كلمة استفهام) ① + فعل مساعد ناقص ② + فاعل ③ + فعل رئيسي ④ + تكملة ...؟

1. What do you do in the mornings?

Unit 2

Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار

1 Responding to good news

الاستجابة عند سماع أخبار سارة

عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

Well done, ... That's great news!

Congratulations! I'm so happy for you.

2 Responding to bad news

الاستجابة عند سماع أخبار غير سارة

• عند سماع خبر أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول:

I'm sorry to hear that.

It's a pity that....

That must be difficult. But don't worry.

I'm sure things will get better with time.

Unit 3

Checking you understand

التأكد من فهمك

◂ عندما نتأكد من فهمنا لموضوع نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- What do you mean?
- I'm (not) sure what you mean.
- Sorry, I don't understand.

◂ عند توضيح معلومة خاصة بموضوع، تستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- I mean…
- In other words, ...

◂ للموافقة / لرفض على رأى تستخدم:

- I (don't) agree!

Unit 4

1 Asking for information on the telephone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

A: How can I help you?

B: Hello, can you tell me ...?

A: Certainly. / Of course. It's....... .

B: I'd like to know what time ....

A: Can I buy ....?

B: Thank you for your help.

2 Responding to an opinion

الرد على الرأى

- I don't agree.
- I don't think so.
- I think it is..........
- I see what you mean.
- Maybe, ...

Unit 5

1 Giving opinion
إبداء الرأى

لتعبير عن رأى نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

I think that (the charities should).....
I'm not sure.........
In my opinion ....
I think it would be better if.......
I see what you mean ....
I agree that it's very important to ....
but I also think it's important to ....
Good idea.

2 Putting things in order
ترتيب عمل الأشياء

First, (اولا) Secondly (ثانيًا) Then (ثم) After that (بعد ذلك) Finally (أخيرًا)

3 Obligation and lack of obligation
الإلزام وعدم الإلزام

A: Do you have to study this evening, Omar?
B: Yes, I do. I have a maths test tomorrow.
A: Where do we have to go the next lesson?
B: The laboratory! We've got science.
A: Do you have to get up early on Fridays?
B: No, I don't.

Unit 6

Suggesting solutions to a problem
اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

Why don't we.................?
How about...?
Let's + inf ...
That's an interesting idea!
We could ...
How can/could we ...?
The problem is ...
People could ...

General Exercises

أسئلة WB / SB على المنهج حسب ترتيب الورقة الامتحانية

السؤال الثاني فى ورقة الامتحان

Complete the following dialogue:

1- **Omar** : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.

Ali : What do you ① ....?

Omar : I ② ...., we need rubbish collectors.

Ali : Sorry, I don't ③ ....

Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!

Ali : That's ④ .... What about street cleaners?

Omar : I'm not ⑤ .... What do you mean?

Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.

Omar : Yes, that's true! They help to keep our cities clean.

Ali : I agree!

2- **Dalida** : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

Heba : I'm ① .... to hear that.

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new ② .... but she couldn't go.

Heba : It's a ③ .... that she couldn't go.

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed!

Heba : That must be ④ ....

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

Heba : ⑤ .... news! I'm so happy for her.

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

Heba : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

3- **Karim** : I think that all teachers are heroes.

Tarek : What ① .... you mean?

Karim : I ② ...., without teachers, we would not learn anything.

Tarek : There's the internet.

Karim : Sorry, I don't ❸ ....

Tarek : The internet can help you learn.

Karim : I'm not ❹ .... what you mean

Tarek : I mean, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.

Karim : I don't ❺ .... We will always need teachers.

Tarek : That's true.

4- Ticket office : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum ❶ ....

Ticket office : Certainly. We open every day except Friday. We close then

Customer : I'd like to know how ❷ .... a ticket, please.

Ticket office : 150 pounds.

Customer : Can I ❸ .... the tickets at the museum

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them ❹ ....

Customer : Thank you for your help.

Ticket office : You are ❺ ....

Customer : Goodbye.

5- Azza : What are you reading?

Adel : I'm reading a book about Ancient Egypt.

Azza : Could you tell me some information about the ❶ .... Egyptians'

Adel : Sure. In Ancient Egypt, many people ❷ .... mirrors to help them paint around their eyes.

Azza : Why did they paint ❸ .... their eyes'

Adel : To make them look good and protect their eyes from the sun.

Azza : What other things did people use in Ancient Egypt?

Adel : They used pots and bowls for making ❹ ....

Azza : How did people make these ❺ .... ?

Adel : These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile

6- Nasser : ① .... you have to study this evening, Omar?

Omar : Yes, I do. I ② .... a geography test tomorrow.

Nasser : What about your brother? Does he have ③ .... study, too?

Omar : No, he ④ ...., but he has to tidy up his bedroom: it's really messy!

Nasser : It's nearly the end of break. Where ⑤ .... we have to go for the next lesson?

Omar : The laboratory! We've got science.

7- Aya : I'm very sad.

Reem : What is the problem?

Aya : The ① .... is that we all use too much water.

Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, ② .... don't we try recycling water?

Reem : ③ .... could we do that?

Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the ④ ......

Reem : That's an interesting ⑤ .... The plants would like that.

Aya : We can also take short showers.

Reem : I will try this.

السؤال الرابع فى ورقة الامتحان

SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a hospital b prison c theatre d beach
2. People without enough money are ....
   a healthy b poor c strong d careless
3. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of .... on it!
   a cushions b news c information d tables
4. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking .... drinking some hot coffee.
   a forward to b after c up d for
5. I'm .... my food stall here because it is the best place in the city.
   a parking b barking c flying d doing
6. You call a .... if there is a problem with your computer system.
   a police officer b shop worker c nurse d computer engineer

7. A .... prepares food for people to eat.
   a) street-food seller b) teacher c) police officer d) computer engineer

8. A .... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
   a) street-food seller b) nurse c) police officer d) computer engineer

9. One of the best .... to be happy is to remember the good things in your life.
   a) roads b) ways c) streets d) paths

10. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in ....
   a) handball b) chess c) swimming d) karate

11. The .... Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019
   a) poor b) junior c) general d) moral

12. A .... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
   a) charity b) coach c) competition d) team

13. A .... is a girl or woman.
   a) man b) female c) male d) child

14. The Egyptian handball team won an important .... in 2020.
   a) experiment b) station c) competition d) expression

15. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.
   a) Tennis b) Boxing c) Snorkelling d) Handball

16. To .... means to be the first in a game or competition.
   a) miss b) win c) lose d) earn

17. The .... Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018.
   a) senior b) final c) nuclear d) ancient

18. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup ....
   a) Final b) Total c) Ball d) Goal

19. The heart .... blood around the body.
   a) takes in b) drinks c) pumps d) plants

20. The .... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.
   a) mountain b) earthquake c) countryside d) crescent

21. A/An .... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) school b) charity c) museum d) theater

22. The .... tells the parts of our body what to do.
   a) heart b) stomach c) eye d) brain

23. A natural .... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.
   a) water b) science c) gas d) disaster

24. or have done something very good.
   a) proud b) bored c) interested d) keen

25. Street .... help to keep our cities clean.
   a) builders b) makers c) walkers d) cleaners

26. I think rubbish .... can be heroes.
   a) reviewers b) managers c) collectors d) bakers

27. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the .... temples.
a ancient b new c difficult d careless
28. Can you tell me the .... of the ticket, please?
a prize b coin c price d object
29. Ancient Egyptians made .... with clay from the Nile River.
a pots b insects c papyrus d magazines
30. Ancient Egyptians used .... to help them paint around their eyes.
a chairs b mirrors c wood d floors
31. A .... has four corners.
a tool b bowl c circle d square
32. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more ....
a pollution b tourism c holiday d history
33. It is important to protect all parts of the ....
a guide b environment c century d pollution
34. Hala is a .... person and there are often things on her bed.
a tidy b friendly c neat d messy
35. We could use the water from washing to .... plants.
a water b cut c drink d end
36. I go to the baker's with my mother ....; we always buy bread in the morning.
a dairy b daily c dearly d deeply
37. Come and sit on this ....: four people can sit on it.
a chair b sofa c cushion d tablet
38. I saw Ahmed's father on his .... to work this morning.
a stay b weight c holiday d way
39. On a .... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop.
a careful b typical c helpful d famous
40. Roberta's family home has a .... garden full of flowers and trees.
a careful b helpful c large d cheap
41. My uncle has a .... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants every evening.
a cap b tap c tape d map
42. The opposite of "attractive" is ....
a small b good c beautiful d ugly
43. The farmer doesn't need to .... his goats in the summer, as they can find their own food in the mountains.
a eat b feed c prefer d plant
44. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a small .... in the country.
a team b factory c river d village
45. A .... gives you light.
a lamp b lamb c lake d leaf

46. You can see yourself in a/an ....
a armchair b wardrobe c mirror d basin
47. A/An .... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.
a wardrobe b chair c lamp d sofa
48. How often do you .... dinner?
a do b make c harm d repair
49. You can catch a plane from a/an ....
a port b part c zoo d airport
50. When you invite a person to your house, they are your ....
a guest b guess c customer d partner
51. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a ....
a suit b pan c pencil case d suitcase
52. When two people get married, they have a ....
a weeding b prize c medal d wedding
53. The skin of a zebra is ....
a striped b lines c silver d golden
54. If you are tired, why don't you .... a rest?
a make b have c be d do
55. In a school, students play games in a ....
a playground b theatre c museum d library
56. A .... is an area of very dry land.
a river b sea c desert d dessert
57. A .... is a boy or girl aged 13-19.
a teenager b child c baby d manager
58. A/An .... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
a event b scientist c worker d hero
59. A .... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
a scientist b nurse c chemist d surgeon
60. .... the meat into small pieces before you cook it.
a Boil b Mend c Cut d Pump
61. Mona's mother is a/an .... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work.
a coach b volunteer c patient d adult
62. Dirty water from a river can .... you if you drink it.
a infect b enjoy c clean d mend
63. You can only open this door in a/an ...., such as a fire.
a pleasure b charity c emergency d organisation
64. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my .... grandmother was born in 1930!
a big b senior c high d great

65. I don't think I .... the answer to this question.
   a know   b show   c no   d go
66. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, ...
   a too   b two   c to   d twice
67. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was ....
   a there   b their   c they are   d they're
68. You can watch a sports match at a/an ....
   a stadium   b statue   c museum   d entrance
69. A/An .... is an entrance to another place.
   a pyramid   b arch   c view   d stone
70. We pray at a ....
   a mosque   b theatre   c museum   d stadium
71. A/An .... has very strong walls.
   a object   b desert   c ticket   d castle
72. A .... is not a complete building.
   a stone   b ruin   c house   d hill
73. You might see a .... in a museum.
   a statue   b race   c temple   d castle
74. There are more than 2,000 .... in the museum.
   a objects   b subjects   c phones   d prices
75. This chemical helps to keep .... mosquitoes.
   a in   b over   c about   d away
76. .... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a Coins   b Pots   c Bowls   d Figures
77. The black and white .... around this window are beautiful.
   a pages   b webs   c prices   d designs
78. A .... is a model of a person.
   a figure   b design   c bowl   d vase
79. Don't play football here or you might .... that car.
   a hurt   b injure   c damage   d repair
80. I love going to .... places such as museums and ancient ruins.
   a historic   b scary   c cultured   d historian
81. Ali's uncle works for a big oil .... in the United Arab Emirates.
   a work   b company   c job   d environment
82. .... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.
   a Maybe   b May   c Might   d Might be
83. I help to look .... my little sister when my parents are busy.
   a after   b up   c for   d to
84. The bin is full. Please can you take .... the rubbish?
   a up   b down   c out   d off

85. Karim is a happy person and always has a .... on his face.
a smile b pencil case c knife d tablet

86. Hala is very .... and leaves her toys all over the floor.
a tidy b dirty c missed d messy

87. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all ....
a up b away c off d din

88. They gave the footballer a .... test to check his health.
a random b handsome c useless d far

89. We all remember my grandfather's .... : he always helped us when we were children.
a careless b weakness c kindness d sadness

90. This book is .... You should read it!
a boring b useless c fantastic d bad

91. Amal finds it very easy to .... friends because she is so friendly.
a do b give c make d hate

92. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a .... walked into his shop.
a relative b friend c teacher d stranger

93. A .... is a small area and the people who live in it.
a community b country c team d communication

94. To .... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help.
a spend b donate c pick up d call

95. If someone is .... to you, they are terrible to you.
a kind b nice c good d cruel

96. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the .... bridge in the world.
a tallest b fattest c widest d youngest

97. Please take your .... home, do not leave it in the park.
a fuel b drought c rubbish d flood

98. It was raining for days and then there was a .... so people used boats to leave their houses!
a flood b volcano c drought d presentation

99. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a ....
a flood b storm c pollution d drought

100. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ....
a clean b fresh c polluted d pure

101. Bikes are a .... form of transport because they use no fuel.
a white b green c blue d red

102. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral ....
a roofs b beef c reefs d leaf

103. The East Hotel is very new. Only .... energy from the sun and wind is used at the hotel.
a black b blue c green d yellow
104. At the moment , a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to .... change.
a climate b date c rate d place
105. Global Recycling Day is an important .... in March.
a event b match c movie d song
106. A/An .... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.
a doctor b call-centre worker c computer engineer d nurse
107. Please .... sure that you write your emails carefully.
a make b take c do d build
108. You can give money to a .... to help poor people.
a beach b charity c farm d cinema
109. I started Preparatory School a year ....
a at b ago c in d for
110. The .... take in air and help us to breathe.
a lungs b arms c eyes d ears
111. A/An .... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
a emergency b charity c nature d organisation
112. We have a........ in the bathroom.
a bed b ruin c temple d mirror
113. Hala has to put ....her toys.
a up b out c away d on
114. Nader and his brother have to ....ready for school.
a make b get c let d eat
115. What .... acts of kindness should you do next week?
a cruel b random c bad d ugly
116. Samir helps to clean beaches and ....rubbish.
a picks up b tidies up c washes up d buys
117. People donate money to the charity and they help to ....the animals.
a eat b feed c kill d hit
118. We should clean the river because it is very ....
a pollution b pure c polluted d fresh
119. The Egyptians opened the Suez .... in 1869.
a River b Sea c Lake d Canal
120. .... is very important to Egypt.
a Tourist b Tourism c Tour d Pollution

121. Tourists bought wonderful .... from the market.
a souvenirs b ships c planes d buses

122. We need more rain or there might be a ....
a storm b drought c flood d climate change

123. Which of these towns is .... on the north-west coast of Egypt?
a located b donated c hated d closed

124. .... reefs are sometimes damaged by boats.
a Car b Coral c Oral d Plural

125. Roberta's family home in the city is big and .... I like going there.
a little b ugly c attractive d terrible

126. The opposite of "terrible" is ....
a good b far c small d ugly

127. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can .... our food.
a check b share c damage d change

128. Roberta feels .... when some men take their father from their home. She doesn't know where he is going or why.
a happy b cheerful c terrible d great

129. Roberta's new house is in the country near a railway ....
a club b line c tree d classroom

130. This family do not have much money and now they are ....
a happy b poor c rich d excited

131. Your father can .... the car on this road, it is very quiet.
a park b put c remind d remember

132. It is usually easy to .... with people in other countries if you speak English.
a listen b communicate c shout d cry

133. My little brother is very .... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV!
a active b angry c interesting d lazy

134. The nurse works on the .... for children.
a stadium b ward c word d playground

135. This is a photo of my parents' ....
a married b marry c wedding d weeding

136. A .... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
a sports coach b scientist c teacher d professor

137. Adam fell off his bike and had a big .... on his arm.
a pump b way c infection d cut

138. I bought .... books yesterday.
a two b to c too d toe

139. .... means very old.
a Modern b Ancient c Public d Awesome

140. A .... is a pot used for holding flowers.
a bowl b box c vase d pan

141. A .... is a person who can show you round a place.
a tourist b professor c manager d guide

142. A .... is what you can see from the top of something.
a pyramid b view c review d ruler

143. She helped to look .... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.
a for b in c from d after

144. My sister is a happy person who always has a .... on her face.
a smile b mile c file d tail

145. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air ....
a pollution b solution c holiday d conclusion

146. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/an ....
a flood b storm c drought d earthquake

147. When there is too much rain, there is often a ....
a war b flood c drought d match

148. When the planet gets warmer, it is called .... change.
a climate b pilot c plate d date

149. When ice is heated, it ....
a freezes b cools c melts d burns

150. A kind old man helps Roberta's father to leave ...., and the family are happy to be together again.
a museum b prison c bed d mosque

151. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a ....
a line b routine c subject d season

152. Can you .... my mother for me, because my phone is not working?
a break b text c listen d read

153. A .... helps people or animals that need help.
a charity worker b sports coach
c nuclear scientist d fruit seller

154. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the ....?
a side b earth c countryside d continent

155. I always give money to a/an .... that helps poor children.
a medicine b library c history d charity

156. Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye ....
a infection b part c nature d look

157. These bowls are made of ....
a clay b flour c air d oil

158. Bees and ants are important ....
a birds b planes c insects d guides

159. A .... is something people wear to cover or protect their face.
a mask b glove c helmet d sock

160. A .... is the daughter of a king or queen.
a prince b beggar c princess d farmer

161. What is the name of a charity which you would like to .... money to?
a donate b steal c burn d sell

162. A .... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs.
a left b lift c gift d ladder

SB & WB Exercises Grammar

1. Grandma, ... you got a watermelon?
a shall b can c has d have

2. Hi! ...... we play a game next weekend?
a Have b Do c Shall d Has

3. Why is Amal .... tired?
a feel b feels c felt d feeling

4. It's at the end of the day and the guests are .... leaving.
a slow b slowly c happy d careful

5. That's my sister. She is smiling .... at the camera.
a careless b careful c happy d happily

6. The teacher treats all her children ....
a kind b kindly c bad d good

7. I'm waiting .... to get on a plane for the first time.
a excited b excitedly c careful d hungrily

8. Are you taller .... your brother?
a that b then c this d than

9. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he .... a leg.
a is lost b to lose c loses d lost

10. Yasser's grandmother ...... work in a hospital.
a used to b is used c uses to d is using to

11. Dina ...... money to a charity, but now she does.
a didn't use to give b gave c doesn't give d used to give

12. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is .... most famous building.
a it is b it's c its' d its

13. Before he got married, Yasser's dad ...... live in Cairo.
a was using b didn't use to c uses to d don't use to

14. Did Hossam Hassan ------ captain of the Egyptian Football team?
a uses to be b was c be d use to be
15. I used to ------ basketball, but I don't now.
a played b play c playing d plays
16. Yasser's uncle ------ live in Tunisia.
a used to b used c using d is used to
17. When you were ten, ------ you use to live in a different house?
a do b does c did d to do
18. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ------ play the piano every day.
a used to b was used to c was using to d use to
19. You ---------- put your rubbish in the bin.
a must b has c mustn't d isn't
20. You ----------listen to the teacher.
a can't b must c mustn't d doesn't
21. In a museum, you ---------- touch the objects.
a must b can c mustn't d will
22. You ---------- be quiet in the library.
a must b don't c mustn't d am
23. While we ---------- to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.
a waited b are waiting c wait d were waiting
24. As we ----------home, Amir phoned me.
a are travelling b travelled c travelling d were travelling
25. As my parents ---------- the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.
a are buying b bought c buy d were buying
26. This month was----------than last month because we had some big storms.
a wettest b wetter c wet d as wet
27. As the teacher was talking , I ---------- a question.
a ask b asked c am asking d were asking
28. While I was reading my book, the phone ----------.
a rang b is ringing c rings d will ring
29. I ---------- my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.
a was putting b will put c put d am putting
30. When we ----------around the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs on them.
a looking b are looking c will look d were looking
31. It's a holiday today. We ---------- to go to school.
a don't have b have c has d doesn't have
32. I ---------- walk to school. I take the bus.
a have to b has to c doesn't have to d don't have to

33. My father .... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
 a have to b has to c don't have to d doesn't have
34. You .... buy your friend a present on his/her birthday.
 a should b shouldn't c should to d aren't
35. When you get on the bus, you .... buy a ticket.
 a don't have to b has to c have to d doesn't have to
36. You .... tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson.
 a can't b should c shouldn't d has to
37. At the weekends, I .... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.
 a doesn't have to b don't have to c have to d has to
38. The books .... he used to help me were his old school books.
 a where b when c which d who
39. My aunt Dalia is a person .... is always very kind to me.
 a which b who c when d where
40. She bought me the trainers .... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team.
 a that b where c who d when
41. It was the watch .... my father gave me for my birthday.
 a who b when c that d where
42. Mrs Sabri's the teacher.......... taught my sister.
 a which b when c where d who
43. I gave the shoes.......... are too small for me to my cousin.
 a who b where c when d which
44. Let's go back to the beach .... we went swimming last week.
 a when b where c who d that
45. The volunteers want to make the canal ....
 a cleanest b more clean c cleaner d most clean
46. The electric buses in Alexandria cause .... air pollution so they are greener than the old buses.
 a less b little c least d many
47. Bikes are .... than cars.
 a green b greenest c greener d more green
48. Mount Kenya is not as .... as Mount Kilimanjaro.
 a higher b highest c high d more high
49. The pollution in the countryside is not as .... as the pollution in cities.
 a worse b bad c worst d most bad
50. Recycling is .... as using less electricity for the environment.
 a more important b less important c not important d as important

51. People think that the seats on the new buses are more comfortable .... the old buses.
   a then b that c there d than
52. The city .... for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
   a is knowing b knows c known d is known
53. Port Said is .... to Suez by the Suez Canal.
   a connect b connecting c connects d connected
54. Many fish are .... in the sea near Port Said.
   a caught b catching c catches d catch
55. Lots of cotton .... in the area.
   a are grown b is grow c grows d is grown
56. Lots of food is .... in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.
   a grow b grew c grows d grown
57. The city .... known for its delicious 'black honey'.
   a am b are c is d were
58. Many ancient monuments and buildings are .... in the city.
   a found b find c finding d finds
59. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited .... thousands of people every year.
   a to b for c by d on
60. Hamdi doesn't .... coffee for breakfast.
   a drinking b drink c is drinking d drinks
61. I ...... my homework before I have my dinner.
   a do usually b usually do c does usually d usually does
62. What time .... your first lesson start?
   a do b does c doing d is
63. ...... your father got a computer?
   a Do b Shall c Can d Has
64. ...... I help you carry your books?
   a Am b Does c Have d Shall
65. ...... your father got a blue car?
   a Have b Has c Can d Shall
66. Why ...... Hoda waving to those girls?
   a is b are c am d can
67. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he .... his grandparents.
   a sees b are seeing c see d is seeing
68. Fady .... wearing a jacket today because it is very hot.
   a is b isn't c are d aren't

69. Nader doesn't usually work in the shop, but his brother is ill so he .... there today.
a helps b help c is helping d are helping
70. The street-food seller usually makes falafels, but he .... cheese sandwiches this morning.
a sell b sells c is selling d are selling
71. The children are singing .... in the playground.
a happy b loud c loudly d careful
72. My grandfather .... work in 2015.
a stopping b stop c will stop d stopped
73. Egypt's football team .... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.
a win b won c to win d winning
74. He .... a junior chess competition when he was only 12!
a wins b win c won d to win
75. He started playing chess when he was very little and he .... always very good at it.
a does b was c has d were
76. There ...... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.
a weren't b didn't c isn't d didn't use to be
77. My grandfather ...... football when he was young, but he can't walk now.
a play b used to play c use to play d plays
78. You .... touch any of the building because it is very old.
a must b can c haven't d mustn't
79. Cars .... drive on this road so we can walk on it safely.
a must b doesn't c mustn't d isn't
80. When we .... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.
a sat b was sitting c sit d to sit
81. While Mona was playing tennis, she .... her arm.
a is hurting b was hurting c hurts d hurt
82. As Karim .... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
a took b was taking c takes d is taking
83. We .... on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station.
a are travelling b travelling c travel d were travelling
84. You .... drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
a should b can't
c doesn't have to d shouldn't
85. We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you .... wear sunglasses and a hat.
a don't have to b have to c shouldn't d can't

86. That is the house .... my grandmother was born.
    a which b where c when d who
87. Saudi Arabia is not as .... as Jordan.
    a wetter b wet c wettest d more wet
88. A train is not as fast .... a plane.
    a so b too c as d just
89. Nessma writes in English as .... as she speaks it.
    a careful b more careful c most careful d carefully
90. The drought this year is not as .... as it was last year.
    a more dangerous b less dangerous
    c dangerous d as dangerous
91. The North Hotel is .... on a lovely beach.
    a locate b located c locates d locating
92. Coral reefs are often .... by scuba divers.
    a damaging b damages c damaged d damage
93. Tourists .... hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day.
    a is taken b are taken c taken d take
94. The honey is .... from sugar.
    a make b made c makes d making
95. Parts of the beach are .... to tourists so that turtles are safe.
    a closed b closing c closes d to closing
96. Taha .... for his funny stories.
    a are known b knows c is known d knew
97. What is Imad .... ? It looks very nice!
    a eat b eating c eats d ate
98. We .... a film and it is very funny.
    a watch b are watching c watches d watching
99. My sister speaks very ....
    a beautiful b careful c quiet d quietly
100. You .... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle.
    a must b are c have d shall
101. The café .... I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
    a when b who c which d where
102. You left the bag .... you bought at the weekend at my house!
    a where b which c who d when
103. Some people say that recycling is not as important .... using less water.
    a as b too c so d also
104. Ali says that football is not .... as handball.
    a difficult b as difficult c most difficult d difficult than

105. A bike is not as .... as a plane.
   a faster   b fastest   c fast   d faster than
106. Alexandria is not as .... as Giza.
   a biggest   b bigger   c big   d so bigger
107. .... time does Don's school finish?
   a When   b What   c Where   d How
108. I can't come to the park because I .... the house today.
   a clean   b cleaning   c am cleaning   d cleans
109. My uncle Rashid .... born in 1961.
   a were   b was   c is   d does
110. I .... my homework when my sister called me.
   a was doing   b will do   c did   d am doing
111. The people were running quickly from the park because it .... to rain.
   a starts   b is starting   c start   d started
112. My uncle .... a fire fighter, but now he is a police officer.
   a used to be   b is   c uses to be   d were
113. You .... eat inside the castle.
   a were   b mustn't   c have   d must
114. There is an important test tomorrow, so you .... play video games.
   a should   b have to   c has to   d shouldn't
115. The place .... I lost my watch was the garden.
   a when   b who   c that   d where
116. I saw Ahmed in the park .... we often play football.
   a who   b that   c where   d when
117. The boy .... was my best friend at school moved to a different city.
   a that   b who   c which   d where
118. There is an important test tomorrow, so you .... play video games.
   a should   b have to   c has to   d shouldn't
119. The place .... I lost my watch was the garden.
   a when   b who   c that   d where
120. I saw Ahmed in the park .... we often play football.
   a who   b that   c where   d when
121. The boy .... was my best friend at school moved to a different city.
   a that   b who   c which   d where
122. Nabila feels ill, so she .... in bed this morning.
   a stays   b is staying   c stay   d stayed
123. On Saturday, I usually .... time with my cousins.
   a spend   b spends   c spending   d am spending
124. Our football team will win because they are playing very ....
   a good   b well   c bad   d badly

125. Where .... live before you moved to Alexandria?
a are you b do you c you used to d did you use to

126. Most of the people .... when the earthquake started.
a sleep b were sleeping c slept d will sleep

127. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous, so you .... do what your teachers tell you.
a don't have to b have to c shouldn't d can't

SB & WB Exercises Grammar

السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: Does Mariam listen to music on the bus? Yes, she **do**. (..............)
2. I always **drinking** milk for breakfast. (..............)
3. What game is Osama **play** on the computer? (..............)
4. Mr Ahmed speaks English **good**. (..............)
5. My friend sews **bad**. (..............)
6. The cat is sitting in the sun **lazy**. (..............)
7. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time **age**. (..............)
8. Magdy Yacoub **was helped** people with heart problems for many years. (..............)
9. Nour El Sherbini **wins** the World Squash Championships in 2020. (..............)
10. Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather **doesn't** use to know how to drive a car. (..............)
11. I **go** to primary school for six years. (..............)
12. You **mustn't** buy your ticket before you enter the castle. (..............)
13. You **must** run inside the building of the school. (..............)
14. As I was walking to school, it **start** to rain. (..............)
15. You **must** touch the stones of the Pyramids. (..............)
16. You **must** climb on the walls: it's dangerous! (..............)
17. While I was doing my homework, I **drop** my pencil. (..............)
18. While I **am playing** on the computer, I found out an interesting fact. (..............)
19. Students shouldn't **forgot** how it feels when they start school. (..............)
20. 2019 was the **hotter** year in Australia. (..............)

21. Many vegetables are **grow** by the farmers around here. (..........)
22. Port Said is **locate** in the north-east of Egypt. (..........)
23. Plastic pollution is **worst** now than it was before. (..........)
24. The traffic in Cairo is **noisy** than Marsa Alam. (..........)
25. **Can** you got any cousins? (..........)
26. This is a nice restaurant. **Do** we eat here, Hassan? (..........)
27. Maya and Rami **text** their cousins in Canada now. (..........)
28. What time do you **doing** your homework after school? (..........)
29. It is important to drive **careful** when it is raining. (..........)
30. Waleed **be** a farmer for more than thirty years. (..........)
31. Aunt Leila **lives** in England from 1995 to 2010. (..........)
32. What games did you **used** to play with your friends? (..........)
33. How did you **used** to go to school? (..........)
34. **Do** you use to have a lot of homework? (..........)
35. In 1990, he **becomes** the number one chess player in our city. (..........)
36. We were all laughing when he **finishes** that funny story. (..........)
37. At school, I **don't have** to arrive on time. (..........)
38. The tourists **what** visit Egypt always love the ancient temples. (..........)
39. The market is a place **that** I often get lost! (..........)
40. That's the teacher **which** teaches us maths. (..........)
41. You **should** run if your legs hurt. (..........)
42. This is the museum **who** the school visited last year. (..........)
43. I love the trainers **who** are blue and red. (..........)
44. The football players are not playing as **good** as they did last week. (..........)
45. Tamer likes reading as **many** as he likes playing computer games. (..........)
46. Mount Catherine is a **high** mountain than Jabal Mousa. (..........)
47. This new phone is **more bad** than my old one! (..........)
48. I think that the river is more polluted **then** it was last year. (..........)
49. Which is **more far** to walk to, the park or the museum? (..........)
50. A lot of oranges **is** grown along the river. (..........)
51. Giza is **knowing** for its ancient pyramids. (..........)
52. The fish that we eat are **catched** in boats most mornings. (..........)
53. The Pyramids **is** visited by thousands of people every day. (..........)
54. Who is as **taller** as you in the class? (..........)
55. Which school subject do you find as interesting **so** English? (..........)

Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your daily routine"

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

"A description of your bedroom"

"People and jobs"

"What you do at the weekend"

"A trip to Al Azhar Park"

"What is a hero?"

"How life used to be different in ancient Egypt"

"A person that you are proud of (your hero)"

"Your city / village in the past and today"

"An object in your home"

"What you think we can do to protect the environment"

"A description of a historic place you visited"

"Random Acts of Kindness"

"School rules"

"How you could help people in your community"

"The place where you live"

"The importance of water"

"Helping the environment"

"How a school helped the community"

End of Term Practice

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What is Aya's father's job?

a a shop worker
b a teacher
c a street-food seller
d it doesn't say

2- Why must Aya stay at home every day?

a to work
b to study
c to look after her brothers and sisters
d to plant trees

3- Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?

a to school
b to the shops
c to a park
d to her teacher's house

4- How does Aya feel when she gets home?

a tired but grateful
b angry
c hungry
d sad

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

Leila : I'm (1) .... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.

Manal : What do you (2) ...., Leila?

Leila : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Manal : (3) .... don't we buy him something together?

Leila : That's an interesting (4) .... What can we get him?

Manal : We (5) .... buy him a magazine to read.

Leila : Good idea!

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses. In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925?

....

2- Why did he think the objects were from a museum?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Some of the objects in the museum were ....

a about 2,000 years old
b the same age as the palace
c newer than the palace
d a lot older than the palace

4- What do you think the word collection means?

a a palace
b an innovation
c things without names
d things you keep together

5- What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?

a They all had museums
b They were interested in history
c They were all very rich
d They were all fantastic

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The boys are waiting .... for the football match to start.

a excited b excitedly c exciting d excite

2- Where did your grandparents .... ?

a lived b used to live c use to live d living

3- While Hassan .... to school, he saw a famous squash player.

a was walking b is walking c walked d walks

4- The new book .... I bought is very interesting.

a who b where c that d when

5- My favourite city .... in the mountains.

a located b locates c is located d is locating

6- Many people in the city live in a .... of flats.

a black b block c chest d house

7- How can you .... with somebody who does not speak your language?

a say b listen c tell d communicate

8- The mountain was very high and we all felt .... at the top because we thought we might fall!

a scare b scared c happy d pity

9- You must not .... the objects in the museum.

a touch b belong to c relax d see

10- Kareem's cousin is .... and never puts his books away.

a messy b cruel c serious d polluted

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Does your sister **likes** ice cream? (..............)

2- Dalida is not here because she **plays** tennis. (..............)

3- The new hotel is **more big** than the old hotel. (..............)

4- Some children **don't must** wear a school uniform (..............)

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total):

summarising the stories of The Railway Children and A Little Princess.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 1

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When the speaker's .... were younger, they lived in Luxor.
   a brothers   b sisters   c grandfathers   d parents
2. The speaker's parents moved to Port Said in ....
   a 1991   b 1990   c 1993   d 1992
3. They lived in a .... flat from 2005 to 2006.
   a small   b big   c large   d high
4. They moved to a bigger .... a year later.
   a house   b flat   c park   d school

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hoda: When do you get up at the weekend?

Fahd: At the weekend, I usually get up early.

Hoda: What ❶ .... you do at the weekend?

Fahd: I always go out with my family.

Hoda: ❷ .... are you going this weekend?

Fahd: We ❸ .... visiting my uncle and aunt.

Hoda: Who do you spend time with?

Fahd: I usually spend time with my cousins.

Hoda: What ❹ .... do you go to bed at the weekend?

Fahd: ❺ .... about ten o'clock.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment**: just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read as a job. Students read for their study or research. All of us

read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive.

Te...

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How is reading a good thing?

....

2. Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. What do you think the word "**Others**" refers to? ....
   a goals b people c points d glasses
4. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means ....
   a discussion b mysteries c sadness d pleasure
5. Many people like to read about the ....
   a research b language c weather d friends

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mum bought some fruits and vegetables .... her way home.
   a on b at c in d for
2. Please put your .... in the bin. Don't drop it on the ground.
   a fuel b drought c rubbish d flood
3. I think the two teams will play the final match in Cairo ....
   a Arch b Castle c Museum d Stadium
4. My parents are at work and I am looking .... my little sister.
   a up b after c for d at
5. My mum bought a .... machine to make us some clothes.
   a sewing b writing c printing d studying
6. Sugar cane is .... in Upper Egypt.
   a grown b growing c grew d grows
7. I visited the Citadel two years ....
   a since b ago c for d when
8. We.......... all tell the truth.
   a must b can't c mustn't d have
9. Miss Mona .... teaches us maths is very friendly.
   a which b where c who d when
10. The cheetah is the .... animal in the world.
   a fast b fastest c faster d as fast

5 ➤ **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- There **was** many people in the club yesterday. (..........)
2- Who **use** to take you to school when you were young? (..........)
3- Egypt is **visit** by tourists from around the world. (..........)
4- I used to **being** fat when I was young. (..........)

E Writing

6 ➤ **Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

....
....
....
....
....

Test 2

A Listening

1 ➤ **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They're going on a boat .... today.
   a trip   b ride   c swim   d drive
2. It's going to be ....
   a fun   b cold   c hot   d warm
3. They have to wear sunglasses and a ....
   a cap   b hat   c boot   d shoe
4. Boats are fun but they can be ....
   a safe   b bad   c well   d dangerous

B Language Functions

2 ➤ **Complete the following dialogue:**

Amr : What's your name?
Raj : My name's Raj.
Amr : Where are you ① ....?
Raj : I'm from India.
Amr : ② .... do you live?
Raj : I live in a village with my parents.

Amr : How many ❸ .... and sisters do you have?

Raj : I have one brother and two ❹ ....

Amr : What jobs do you do in the house?

Raj : I ❺ .... the chickens.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Shahd is a nice girl. She has no brothers or sisters. Her parents love her very much. She has kind grandparents who live in the next street.

Today, Shahd is visiting her grandparents. She loves them very much because they are very kind. Ezzat is Shahd's grandfather. He loves his granddaughter. He always tells her stories. At this moment, she is sitting on his knee. She is listening to a new story. She is smiling. She loves her grandfather's stories. Right now, he is holding her hands. They are sitting in the living room. Zeinab is Shahd's grandmother. At this moment, Zeinab is in the kitchen. **She** is baking cookies for Ezzat and Shahd. She is also listening to Ezzat's story.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where is Shahd sitting at the moment? Why?

....

2- What does the underlined pronoun "**She**" refer to?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Shahd's grandmother is .... at the moment.

a telling a story b cleaning the house
c baking cookies d sitting

4- .... is/are listening to Ezzat's story.

a Only Zeinab b Zeinab and Shahd
c No one d Only Shahd

5- Shahd and her grandfather are in the ....

a kitchen b bedroom
c living room d hall

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm learning .... to improve my handwriting.

a photography b sewing c parking d calligraphy

2. Our National Football Team won the final .... Algeria.

a) above   b) about   c) against   d) for

3. The Great Pyramid .... to thousands of years ago.

a) dates   b) comes back   c) keeps   d) brings

4. When I get up at 7 every day, I have to tidy .... my bedroom.

a) for   b) up   c) at   d) off

5. Many students passed as it is shown on the .... in the line graph.

a) x-box   b) x-rays   c) x-files   d) x-axis

6. Samir is my best friend, so I .... sit next to him.

a) always   b) never   c) don't   d) doesn't

7. A: When .... you start this job?

B: In 2016.

a) do   b) have   c) are   d) did

8. The children .... ice cream while they were watching TV.

a) are eating   b) eat   c) were eating   d) eats

9. Should I .... the truth?

a) tells   b) tell   c) told   d) telling

10. Hamza is .... as Mo'men.

a) as tall   b) taller   c) tall   d) tallest

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Suzan is good at languages. She __speak__ three languages very well. (........)

2- How long did it __took__ the workers to complete the building? (........)

3- This is the village __which__ I live. (........)

4- Sinai is __locate__ in north-east of Egypt. (........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your city in the past and today"

....

....

....

....

....

Test 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker is looking after .... at a hospital.
   a pupils b friends c patients d boys
2. The speaker is looking after children in children's ....
   a house b flat c school d ward
3. The speaker is feeling .... tonight
   a happy b sad c tired d glad
4. The speaker is looking forward to going home and having a ....
   a drink b food c fruit d rest

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Emy : My mother is an important nurse, Mrs Soad Ramadan, but her life used to be difficult.

Rasha: Where did your mother 1 .... to be a nurse?

Emy : At Cairo University.

Rasha: What does she 2 .... now?

Emy : She is a 3 .... at a big hospital in Cairo.

Rasha: A manager?

Emy : Yes, she helps to teach younger nurses.

Rasha: I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very 4 .... to get an important job.

Emy : You are right and now she helps people every day.

Rasha: I'm 5 .... of your mother and I want to be like her.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at fixed times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But, in fact, most of <u>them</u> don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. People should

not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many fizzy drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or do sports.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy?

----

2. How many meals do most people have every day?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ------.
   a doctors   b people   c fruit   d meals
4. ------ people care about what they should eat for each meal.
   a All   b Many   c Few   d No
5. ------ can advise people about their health.
   a Teachers   b Doctors   c Workers   d Engineers

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Bikes are a ---------- form of transport because they use no fuel.
   a blue   b yellow   c black   d green
2. Ahmed looks forward ---------- the full mark in the science exam.
   a to get   b to getting   c get   d getting
3. This writer was the first one -------- for children.
   a to writing   b write   c to write   d writing
4. When will the train arrive -------- the station?
   a in   b before   c at   d on
5. My sister Yara always ------- up after every meal.
   a gives   b takes   c washes   d looks
6. The -------- shows how many people died in the last disaster.
   a car chart   b far chart   c bar chart   d jar chart
7. Dalida ---------- first in the school races.
   a usually come   b usually comes   c come usually   d comes usually
8. Our friends Noha and Ahmed --------- married last week.
   a got   b get   c gets   d are getting
9. The students were playing in the playground when the bell --------.
   a rings   b to ring   c is ringing   d rang
10. Tomorrow is a holiday. You -------- get up early.
   a have to   b don't have to   c has to   d doesn't have to

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- There was a hole **in front to** the car, so we stopped. (..............)
2- A year **for**, I bought a new car. (..............)
3- The man **where** is tall, is my cousin. (..............)
4- The whale is **biggest** than the dolphin. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"The importance of water"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 4

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people used ....
   a mirrors b pens c pots d tins
2. They used to .... around their eyes.
   a draw b paint c see d clean
3. This helped them to protect their eyes from the ....
   a smoke b moon c sun d dust
4. The paint kept away ....
   a cats b flies c bees d insects

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasmin : Do you like historic places?
Mariam : ① ...., I do.
Yasmin : Which ② .... do you like most?
Mariam : I like Petra.
Yasmin : ③ .... is it?

Mariam : It's in Jordan.

Yasmin : How old is it?

Mariam : It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than 2,000 ❹ .... old!

Yasmin : How can I visit it?

Mariam : You must buy a ❺ .... to visit it. It's an amazing place.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr Tawfeek's family lives in a village. They were very happy because Mr Tawfeek bought a new a car. It isn't new, but they liked it very much. They never had a car before they bought their first car. Before they bought it, they used buses, trains and taxis. They never owned anything so expensive before they bought the car.

The children were very excited about their car. The children never rode in a car before their parents bought one. They only saw a few cars when they went to town for shopping. But nobody they knew <u>**owned**</u> a car before that day. They felt very lucky.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why was the family very happy?

....

2- Would you like to have a car? Why / Why not?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The family's car isn't ....

a old   b big   c new   d fast

4- The underlined word "**owned**" means ....

a drove   b had   c cleaned   d bought

5- They didn't see.......... cars in the town.

a many   b few   c a lot of   d much

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will meet the manager tomorrow.   - Me ....

a two   b to   c too   d toe

2. The nurses and the doctor went to the children's .... to check the sick babies.

a word   b ward   c company   d street

3. I played for Al Ahly football .... team when I was under-19.

a junior   b normal   c senior   d final

4. When the earthquake happened, the city became .... in minutes.
a walls b temples c guides d ruins

5. Climate .... means it's getting warmer around the world.
a change b bridge c orange d stage

6. How .... do you visit your grandparents? - Always.
a deep b many c often d much

7. Did you use .... your friends every day in the past?
a met b to meet c meets d is met

8. People were trying to put out the fire .... the fire fighters arrived.
a when b as c while d on

9. Before you take the train, you .... buy a ticket.
a shouldn't b aren't c should d doesn't have to

10. Modern mobile phones are .... than old ones.
a good b good as c best d better

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- <u>Have</u> we go out now? (............)
2- <u>Does</u> Sameh use to give money to charities? (............)
3- I <u>have to</u> get up early. It's a holiday. (............)
4- English is easier <u>that</u> maths. (............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"A description of your bedroom"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 5

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker lives with his / her family in ....
   a Tanta b London c Australia d Cairo
2. The speaker and his/her family .... go on trips around Egypt.
   a always b never c usually d sometimes
3. They like going to ....
   a the Giza Zoo b Al Azhar Park c the cinema d the High Dam
4. They always have .... there.
   a lunch b fun c headache d breakfast

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rawan : Who do you live with?
Sherifa : I (1) .... with my parents and my two brothers.
Rawan : How do you and your brothers get to school?
Sherifa : I walk to school with my brothers.
Rawan : What's your (2) .... subject?
Sherifa : My favourite subject is English.
Rawan : How (3) .... do you listen to music?
Sherifa : I sometimes (4) .... to music.
Rawan : What do you do in the evenings?
Sherifa : I usually (5) .... a book on a sofa.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired for his speed and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to the World Cup finals since 1990.

He is a kind person. Salah is famous for his kind and generous donations to charities in Egypt. He donated money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model for millions of Egyptians.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- When did Mohamed Salah score the goal to send Egypt to the World Cup?

....

2- What is Mohamed Salah admired for?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Mohamed Salah gives young people a hope to ....

a fail b eat c play d succeed

4- Mohamed Salah is famous for his kind ....

a money b donations c schools d hospitals

5- Mohamed Salah plays for a good team in ....

a Africa b America c Europe d Australia

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That architect designed a block of .... all over the country.
   a flags b flats c rooms d flies
2. A: What are you doing? B: I am .... everything ready for the trip.
   a getting b travelling c coming d taking
3. This hospital has the best .... in the whole country.
   a coaches b goals c farmers d surgeons
4. I showed my pen friend.......... old Cairo when he came to Egypt.
   a about b round c over d under
5. There was no rain for a long time and that caused a serious ....
   a wave b storm c flood d drought
6. "........... to the radio every day?" "Yes, I always listen to the radio."
   a Do you listen b Are you listening c Did you listen d Are you listen
7. Hala .... a diet, but now she does.
   a had b doesn't have
   c didn't use to have d used to have
8. You......... drive fast here; there is a school nearby.
   a have b must c aren't d mustn't
9. This is the office .... my father works.
   a when b which c where d who
10. The lion is one of the .... dangerous animals.
   a more b most c bad d worse

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- <u>Does</u> you play the piano? (..............)

2- Why are you walking <u>slow</u>? Are you tired? (..............)

3- While we **had** the picnic, it started to rain. (..................)

4- Bugatti is **the more** expensive car in the world. (..................)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"How you can help people in your community"

....

....

....

....

....

Test 6

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Port Said is located in the north .... of Egypt.
   a) east b) west c) south d) near
2. The city is known for its ....
   a) cars b) planes c) boats d) ships
3. Port Said is connected to .... by the Suez Canal.
   a) Sohag b) Minya c) Suez d) Tanta
4. Many fish are caught in the sea .... Port Said.
   a) near b) next to c) above d) on

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal : Where are you from?

Judy : I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt.

Amal : How do you describe your (1) ....?

Judy : It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby.

Amal : Do you live with your grandparents?

Judy : No, I (2) .... with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.

Amal : (3) .... do you like studying at school?

Judy : My favourite subjects are maths and English.

Amal : What do you (4) .... in the afternoons?

Judy : I (5) .... my friends or play computer games with my brother.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Suez Canal is very important to Egypt. It is the longest canal in the world. Many ships travel through it each year. All the ships pay money to use the canal. We earn a lot of money from the canal. The Suez Canal is important because it shortens the way between the east and the west. It is quicker to travel through the canal than to travel round Africa. Long ago, the Egyptians dug the Suez Canal and now are proud that they did something very useful. Now the Suez Canal helps many countries to send their goods to other places in short times and with less money than sending them through other canals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is the Suez Canal important to Egypt?

....

2. Who dug the Suez Canal?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The Suez Canal is the ...... canal in the world.
   a long   b longer   c longest   d short
4. Many countries send their ...... to other places on ships.
   a money   b goods   c farms   d factories
5. All the ships pay ...... to use the canal.
   a travel   b advice   c ideas   d money

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omayma is a clever girl. She always helps her mum .... dinner.
   a do   b feed   c make   d hurt
2. My grandfather took part in three wars. He is a real ....
   a scientist   b hero   c enemy   d champion
3. Tourists like to visit .... places in Egypt.
   a chemical   b musical   c plastic   d historic
4. .... help a lot of people to live a better life.
   a Parks   b Charities   c Schools   d Houses
5. .... is a long period when there is little or no rain.
   a Drought   b Rubbish   c Flood   d Wildlife

6. "..........to the radio now?" "No, you can turn it off."
   a Do you listen b Are you listening a Did you listen b you listen
7. My family .... have a party every month five years ago.
   a used b use to c used to d is used to
8. Mona ....when an earthquake happened.
   a sleeps b was sleeping c slept d to sleep
9. October is the month .... I was born.
   a when b where c which d who
10. Corona Virus is .... dangerous than the flu.
   a most b best c more d better

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- **Is** Osman live in a house or a flat? (..........)
2- I got up **lately** this morning. (..........)
3- You **should** eat lots of sweets if you want to lose some weight. (..........)
4- It's very sunny today, you **don't have** to wear sunglasses. (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"School rules"

....
....
....
....
....

Test 7

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker usually gets up at ....
   a 6 b 7 c 8 d 6.30
2. The speaker helps .... make breakfast.
   a sister b dad a mum b brother
3. The speaker's .... starts work very early.
   a brother b mum c son d dad
4. The speaker's dad doesn't have ....with his / her family.
   a breakfast b lunch c dinner d supper

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina : We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He is an important ❶ ....

Ramy : When was he ❷ ....?

Dina : He was born in 1935, in Bilbeis.

Ramy : Where did he ❸ .... in the past?

Dina : He worked in a special ❹ .... in London.

Ramy : How did he help people at this hospital?

Dina : He helped to give people new hearts for the first time.

Ramy : What else did he do?

Dina : He started a ❺ .... to help children with heart problems.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I like pets very much. I like dogs best. I have a nice dog. The name of my dog is Jack. It is black in colour. It is four years old. Jack is a great fun. It does everything I ask it to do. It keeps cats away from my house. If it sees a cat, it runs after <u>it</u>. It barks when it sees a stranger in my house. It never bites. It eats everything my mother gives it. But, it likes to eat meat most. Whenever I come back from school, it runs towards me. After I finish my homework, Jack and I play together. Sometimes, it jumps and runs after me. I love my dog. My dog also loves me very much.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What does the writer like?

....

2- What's good about Jack?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Jack .... when it sees a stranger.

a barks b runs c hides d sleeps

4- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a Jack b a cat c a stranger d the house

5- Jack likes to eat .... most.

a everything b fish c meat d cats

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar has a lot of money, that's ………… he helps poor people a lot.
   a when b why c what d whose
2. A/An ………… speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.
   a police officer b call-centre worker
   a computer engineer b street-food seller
3. I hope I will win the school swimming ………… this year.
   a competition b treatment c charity d experiment
4. We had a school trip to Qaitbey ………… in Alexandria last week.
   a Guide b Castle c Ticket d Race
5. When you have a lot of food, you should ………… it with poor people.
   a play b look c share d chair
6. We usually grow vegetables in our garden but this year we ………… any.
   a don't grow b aren't growing
   c am not growing d doesn't grow
7. I ………… use to get high marks when I was at school.
   a don't b didn't c do d doesn't
8. ………… I was staying in Alexandria, I went to the beach many times.
   a which b As c Where d That
9. We are late. We ………… take a taxi.
   a has to b doesn't have to c don't have to d have to
10. Muhammad is the ………… man in the town.
   a old b as old c older d oldest

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Have they **get** two beautiful children? (…………)
2- Your French isn't good, but you speak English **good**. (…………)
3- **When** time does your dad come from work? (…………)
4- Shahd is not as successful **than** her brother. (…………)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"People and jobs"

……………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………

Test 8

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The British made a special ship for the Cleopatra's ....
   a Needle b Statue c Temple d Jewellary
2. While the ship was travelling to ...., it sank.
   a Cairo b Paris c London d Dubai
3. The ship sank in a ....
   a well b wave c wind d storm
4. Another .... helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.
   a storm b plane c ship d truck

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hazem : Do you know Jerash?

Salma : No. ❶ .... is Jerash?

Hazem : Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan.

Salma : A Roman city? How ❷ .... is it?

Hazem : It is more than 2,000 years old!

Salma : What ❸ .... the Romans do there?

Hazem : They ❹ .... a stadium.

Salma : What did they use to watch at the stadium?

Hazem : They used to watch the Roman horse ❺ ....

Salma : That's amazing! I must visit this city.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Once there was a very rich lady whose husband died after leaving her a lot of money. She was eighty years old so she was too old to live alone and look after herself. The lady went to live in a very expensive hotel and she took her dogs with her. She had a pair of ugly dogs which used to make a lot of noise. The lady loved her two dogs so much although nobody else did.

After six months, a waiter came to work at the hotel and began to do everything to help the woman. He did that only because he expected her to leave him some money after caring about her and her dogs. Two years later, the woman died and in her will she said that the waiter was so kind to her that she wanted him to take the things which she loves best. Can you guess what did she leave for the waiter? Her two ugly dogs!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the old lady live in the hotel?

....

2. What did she leave for the waiter?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The lady died when she was about ...... years old.
   a 78 b 80 c 82 d 70
4. The two dogs were very ....
   a beautiful b noisy c quiet d cheap
5. The hotel was not ....
   a cheap b expensive c comfortable d wide

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On a .... day , I study for five hours.
   a careful b typical c helpful d famous
2. I will drive dad to the .... He is travelling to the USA tomorrow.
   a university b nursery c airport d wedding
3. Sally had a problem in her .... because she ate something bad.
   a stomach b heart c leg d brain
4. A/An .... is jewellery you wear around your neck.
   a boot b ring c earring d necklace
5. We all should try to .... the problem of pollution.
   a hurt b reuse c remind d solve
6. Mariam is in London at the moment. She .... at a famous hotel.
   a stay b is staying c staying d stayed
7. .... your uncle use to plant in the past?
   a Do b Does c Done d Did
8. You .... take medicine without asking the doctor.
   a are b mustn't c should d must
9. .... he have to get up early?
   a Do b is c Does d Are
10. This car is faster .... the other electric cars on the market.
    a then b than c the d that

5 **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Do they **coming** from London? (..............)
2- He looked at me **angry** when I shouted at my son. (..............)
3- My father **did** use to smoke, but now he does. (..............)
4- We **mustn't** get a ticket to enter the cinema. (..............)

E Writing

6 **Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"The Random Acts of Kindness"

Test 9

A Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The girl came into the speaker's .... shop today.
   a baker's b flower's c book d shoe
2. The girl was a ....
   a teacher b nurse c doctor d servant
3. She didn't have very new ....
   a clothes b shoes c bags d pens
4. The money that she had was enough to buy a few ....
   a buns b fruits c cakes d apples

B Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue:**

Muhammad : Which room do you like best?
Mustafa : I like my bedroom.
Muhammad : Do you (1) .... any brothers and sisters?
Mustafa : (2) ...., I do. I have one brother and one sister.
Muhammad : Do you share a (3) .... with your brother?
Mustafa : Yes, I do.

Muhammad : How ④ .... beds are there in your bedroom?

Mustafa : There are two beds.

Muhammad : Where is your ⑤ ....?

Mustafa : My bed is under the window.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My family lives in a small house. It's simple but pretty. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister hates to work in the garden. She prefers to read.

I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. Then my sister washes up. At night, dad likes to listen to music. Mum works on the computer. I watch television and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Who doesn't enjoy working in the garden?

....

2- What does the sister like to do?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- There are .... members in the family.

a two   b three   c four   d five

4- At night, dad likes to ....

a play football   b listen to music   c wash up   d cook

5- The family lives in a .... house.

a big   b sad   c small   d large

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went into the kitchen and washed my hands under the ....

a top   b tap   c tape   d trick

2. The heart is in your ....

a head   b stomach   c mouth   d body

3. The workers found a box of gold .... in the old site.

a coins   b papers   c views   d times

4. They had a small .... with close friends and family yesterday.

a lesson   b wedding   c weeding   d ending

5. When I was in Alexandria, I helped to clean the beach and .... up the rubbish.
a put b give c wash d pick

6. Mariam always .... at a famous hotel when she's in London.
a stay b stays c staying d is staying

7. What did you eat for lunch .... ?
a yesterday b tomorrow c now d next week

8. What .... Hussein doing when the light went out last night?
a does b is c can d was

9. You should always .... polite.
a am b be c is d are

10. The environment is .... by many scientists.
a studied b studies c study d studying

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- She fell and hurt herself **bad**. (..............)
2- This **is** my way to school when I was young. (..............)
3- I was listening to music, so I **don't** hear the fire alarm. (..............)
4- I work for a charity **where** looks after animals. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What you do at the weekend"

....
....
....
....
....

Test 10

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker's home city is ....
a Minya b Tanta c Cairo d Alexandria

2. It is located near the ....
a beach b sea c Nile d lake

3. The city is known for its delicious ....

a 'black honey' b white honey c fruit d vegetables

4. Many .... monuments and buildings are found in the city

a new b old c ancient d modern

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rawan : What is handball?

Magda : It's a sport with seven players in a team.

Rawan : How do they ❶ ....?

Magda : They score by throwing the ball into a ❷ ....

Rawan : Did Egypt win any ❸ .... in handball?

Magda : Yes, Egypt won many competitions in handball.
Do you know that Egypt has a junior team and a senior team?

Rawan : Really! What did the Egyptian junior ❹ .... win?

Magda : In 2019, the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final against Germany.

Rawan : Did the Egyptian senior team win any cups?

Magda : Yes, they won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia
❺ .... 2020.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amany. I'm 14 years old. I go to preparatory school. I'm in class 2B. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I have a shower and wear my school uniform. I have breakfast at 7:30 with my family. I usually drink a glass of milk. After breakfast, I brush my teeth and then my dad drives me to school. I have classes from 8:30 a.m. to 3:30 p.m. and I always have lunch at break.

After classes, I go home by bus. I do my homework and at 5 o'clock I have a snack - yogurt and a cheese sandwich. Then I watch TV. My parents come home at 7 o'clock and we have dinner at 8. I usually study till 10 o'clock, then I go to bed.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Which school does Amany go to?

....

2. Who does she have breakfast with?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Amany goes to school ....
   - a by car
   - b on foot
   - c by bus
   - d by bike
4. Amany wears a school ....
   - a bag
   - b dress
   - c shoe
   - d uniform
5. Amany has classes for .... hours.
   - a seven
   - b six
   - c four
   - d eight

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My baby sister was crying and mum was .... her.
   - a eating
   - b hurting
   - c studying
   - d feeding
2. Omnia picked up her large .... and walked towards the ticket office.
   - a suitcase
   - b pencil case
   - c boat
   - d cooker
3. You should .... those tomato plants in the garden.
   - a draw
   - b work
   - c plant
   - d design
4. I turned on the TV to see what was..........
   - a off
   - b on
   - c for
   - d in
5. You should help people who are ....
   - a rich
   - b happy
   - c disabled
   - d funny
6. Rubbish in the river damages the ....
   - a wildlife
   - b rubbish
   - c drought
   - d disaster
7. I usually finish work at 5.00, but this week I .... until 6.00.
   - a work
   - b working
   - c works
   - d am working
8. We .... throw away the rubbish in the streets.
   - a should
   - b have to
   - c shouldn't
   - d has to
9. Where .... you use to live in the past?
   - a do
   - b did
   - c were
   - d are
10. Mersa Matrouh is .... than Alexandria.
    - a farthest
    - b far
    - c farther
    - d far as

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- The water **boils** now. Can you turn it off? (..............)
2- Mr Osman used to **taught** us maths at school. (..............)
3- They picked up the rubbish **when** the people left behind. (..............)
4- The door **are** opened by Mariam. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Helping parents at home"

....
....
....
....
....

Test 11

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker visited .... with his / her family last year.
   a Athens b Britain c France d America
2. The speaker saw Roman.........., temples and museums there.
   a schools b theatres c houses d parks
3. The speaker isn't usually very interested in ....
   a music b art c math d history
4. The places in Athens are ....
   a awesome b bad c nice d terrible

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy : I have some information about Cleopatra's Needle.
Amr : What is Cleopatra's Needle?
Ramy : It ❶................ a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.
Amr : Who ❷.. it?
Ramy : The Ancient Egyptians made it.
Amr : Is it in Egypt?

Ramy : ❸ ...., it is in England.

Amr : Where can I ❹ .... it in England?

Ramy : You can see it next to the River Thames in London.

Amr : I will ❺ .... it one day.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Noura is a musician. She works in a studio. She plays the piano. Every day, she gets up at nine o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and gets dressed. She drinks a cup of tea and eats some toast. At ten o'clock, she takes a taxi to the studio. In the studio, Noura plays the piano. She writes new songs and makes CDs. At one o'clock, she goes to a nearby restaurant. She eats lunch with her friends. At three o'clock, she goes to the studio again. She plays more music and sings. At six o'clock, she goes home and has dinner. She goes to the concert hall at eight o'clock. She plays music for lots of people. They like her songs. She goes home at eleven o'clock. She is very tired when she goes to bed.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What does Noura do at night?

....

2- How does Noura go to the studio?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- People like Noura's ....

a CD's　b piano　c songs　d clothes

4- Noura goes to the studio .... a day.

a twice　b once　c three times　d five times

5- Noura goes to the concert hall at .... o'clock.

a 5　b 4　c 8　d 9

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police put the young man in .... after he killed two children.

a school　b prison　c hospital　d bed

2. There were many .... at the wedding party yesterday.

a buyers　b sellers　c guests　d animals

3. The furniture in this house .... very old.
   a is b were c are d does
4. Leila wears sunglasses to protect her eyes .... the sun.
   a of b for c from d under
5. The small area and the people in our village are called a ....
   a team b group c community d country
6. Dina .... to bed very early last night because she was very tired.
   a go b goes c gone d went
7. We didn't go out because it was raining ....
   a heavy b heavily c hardly d carelessly
8. In a messy classroom, students .... tidy it up.
   a should b shouldn't c don't have to d has to
9. Glass is .... from sand.
   a make b makes c making d made
10. I used to be active when I .... young.
   a am b was c were d been

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- I like tennis but I **doesn't** like football. (............)
2- I'm busy. I **clean** the house. (............)
3- Why **did** you do your homework? The teacher will be angry with you. (............)
4- That is the seller **where** we talked to. (............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What is a hero?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 12

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Marwa always gets up at .... in the morning.
   a 7 b 8 c 6:30 d 7:30
2. Marwa's .... always makes breakfast.
   a father b sister c aunt d mum
3. Marwa's parents work at the ....
   a hospital b school c workshop d university
4. Marwa often helps to make ....
   a lunch b supper c dinner d breakfast

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hend : What do you do?

Amal : I'm a ❶ ....

Hend : What ❷ .... do you do?

Amal : I ❸ .... after patients at a hospital.

Hend : ❹ .... you like your job?

Amal : Yes, I like my job but I'm feeling tired tonight.

Hend : Why are you ❺ .... tired?

Amal : Because the hospital is very busy.

Hend : If you are tired, why don't you have a rest?

Amal : That's a good idea!

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tarek wakes up at 7 o'clock. He has a bath and gets dressed. He has breakfast at home. He leaves home at about 8 o'clock and goes to school on foot. His parents go to work earlier. He arrives at school at 8:20. He starts classes at half past eight every morning. He has lunch in the school canteen.

Tarek is a very good student and he always has very good grades. He studies very hard. His classes finish at 3 o'clock. After classes, he comes home, does his homework and studies. Sometimes he plays football with his friends. He helps his mother cook lunch when she comes home late. After dinner, he watches TV and goes to bed at 9:30.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What time does Tarek wake up?

....

2. How does Tarek go to to school?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Tarek is very .... at home.
   a lazy b careless c helpful d helpless
4. Tarek likes playing ....
   a chess b computer games c tennis d football
5. Tarek is a .... student.
   a clever b lazy c stupid d poor

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the students are still .... the research which the teacher asked for.
   a making b doing c taking d repairing
2. This photo shows some children and a tree .... the left.
   a on b in c for d with
3. This good man always gives a lot of money to a ....
   a team b charity c game d century
4. The ancient Egyptians used to put .... on their dead kings' faces.
   a masks b arches c pyramids d temples
5. **A:** How .... do you watch TV at night?
   B: Never.
   a often b many c deep d far
6. The .... in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
   a rubbish b chart c graph d climate
7. Our team lost the game because we played ....
   a bad b badly c good d well
8. Does she .... wash up?
   a have to b has to c have d has
9. Spanish is not .... in China.
   a speaks b spoken c speak d speaking
10. Mona isn't as .... as Sara.
   a beautiful b more beautiful c most beautiful d the most beautiful

5) Read and correct the underlined words:

1- **Shall** you got a modern phone? (..............)
2- Hassan is a pilot. He **is knowing** everything about flying. (..............)
3- I **use** to be fat when I was young. (..............)
4- At midnight, we **was** still driving through the desert. (..............)

E Writing

6) Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"How to be polite to your friends"

Test 13

A Listening

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Magdy Yacoub is a ....

a doctor b teacher c farmer d vet

2. His .... was an important doctor.

a brother b sister c father d mother

3. Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in ....

a Cairo b Tanta c Alex d Aswan

4. Many .... children can now live healthy lives.

a bad b ill c clever d good

B Language Functions

2) Complete the following dialogue:

Hazem : Do you have to walk to school?
Mo'men : No, I don't. I take the bus, but my best friend doesn't.
Hazem : What ① .... your best friend have to do?
Mo'men : He has to walk to school.
Hazem : Why does he have to walk to school?

Mo'men : ⑤ .... the school isn't far from his house.
Hazem : What sort of jobs do you ⑥ .... to do at home?
Mo'men : I have to ⑦ .... after my little brother, take out the rubbish and do my homework.
Hazem : How much ⑧ .... do you have to do this evening?
Mo'men : I have to do much homework for English and maths.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr and Mrs Taha have one son and one daughter. The son's name is Essam. The daughter's name is Sarah.

The family lives in a house. They have a living room. They watch TV in the living room. The mother cooks food in the kitchen. They eat in the dining room. The house has two bedrooms. They sleep in the bedrooms. There is one bathroom. They brush their teeth in the bathroom.

The house has a garden. Essam and Sarah play in the garden. They have a cat. Essam and Sarah like to play with it.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- How many children do Mr and Mrs Taha have?

....

2- Where does the family eat?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Essam and Sarah .... in the garden.

a play b plant c sit d wait

4- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a garden b bathroom c cat d house

5- The house has more than one ....

a bedroom b living room c kitchen d bathroom

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a bank .... the end of the street where I live.

a off b at c from d for

2. I can see a boy and a girl in the .... of the photo.

a medal b metal c moon d middle

3. The .... take air into the body.

a ears b teeth c lungs d eyes

4. I put fresh flowers in this.......... every morning.

a bin b vase c pool d stone

5. My brother writes about his interests on his .... on the internet.

a blog b log c fog d book

6. You're speaking very .... I can't hear you.

a quietly b quiet c slow d well

7. This is the flat ....my father bought.

a where b which c who d when

8. .... coffee served here?

a Are b Do c Is d Have

9. You .... get up early in the holidays.

a don't have to b have to c must d has to

10. Ahmed used to study hard. Now he ....

a isn't b doesn't c didn't d don't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- At the moment, the children **isn't watching** TV. (..........)

2- He **mustn't** be careful when he uses a knife. (..........)

3- It never **shining** in winter in my country. (..........)

4- You **should** eat lots of sweets if you want to be healthy. (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"A person that you are proud of (your hero)"

....

....

....

....

....

Test 14

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank.
   a Eight b Seven c Six d Nine
2. The river was near the city ....
   a star b centre c bank d library
3. The students collected 15 .... of rubbish.
   a bottles b tins c bags d cans
4. Students were .... to find so much rubbish.
   a happy b glad c nice d sad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Muhammad : Last weekend, some students were volunteers and they collected rubbish.

Mustafa : What ❶ .... the students clean?

Muhammad : They cleaned up the part of the riverbank.

Mustafa : How ❷ .... students helped?

Muhammad : Ten students.

Mustafa : How much rubbish did they ❸ ....?

Muhammad : They collected 15 bags of rubbish.

Mustafa : ❹ .... type of rubbish did they find?

Muhammad : There were lots of plastic bags and bottles.

Mustafa : I think ❺ .... in the river will damage the wildlife.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last week, mum baked a cake for my birthday party. I wanted a chocolate cake. Mum was happy to cook it.

First, mum mixed the ingredients in a big bowl. Next, she poured the cake into a baking pan. She put the pan in the oven. Finally, she baked the cake for 30 minutes. After the cake cooled, mum covered <u>it</u> with chocolate. She wrote my name on top with white chocolate. She put seven candles in the cake.

On Sunday, mum brought me the cake. I loved it! It was a lovely day. All my friends, cousins and neighbours came to our house.

I had many presents for my birthday. But, I said that mum's cake was the best of them all!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did the writer's mum use to write the name on the cake?

....

2. How old was the writer?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ....

a party b cake c chocolate d oven

4. The writer's mum baked the cake for ....

a an hour b two hours c 20 minutes d half an hour

5. The writer had many .... for his/her birthday.

a cakes b cousins c presents d postcards

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists like to buy wonderful .... from that market.

a souvenirs b trees c clouds d mountains

2. The .... shirt which you bought is really fantastic. Everyone likes it.

a spoken b frozen c boiled d striped

3. My sister passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very .... of her.

a proud b sad c interesting d afraid

4. Please, close this window to keep .... insects.

a in b of c way d away

5. My elder brother works as a .... at El Nahda school.

a such as b a c like d that

6. Aswan is .... in the south of Egypt.

a thrown b donated c located d stayed

7. Hossam smiled .... at the camera.

a happy b happily c sad d good

8. This is the city .... I live.

a what b who c when d where

9. TV .... in the evening.
   a is watched b watches c watching d watch
10. She reads English as .... as she reads Arabic.
   a good b better c well d bad

5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:

1- I sometimes **goes** to the cinema. (..............)
2- We **make** our beds now. (..............)
3- Samy **waiting** for us when we got off the plane. (..............)
4- You **should to** tell the truth. (..............)

E Writing

6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Charites in our community"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 15

A Listening

1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker works as a volunteer for a ....
   a school b park c charity d hospital
2. At the weekend, the speaker goes to the ....
   a hospital b house c farm d beach
3. The speaker picks up the ....
   a apples b rubbish c flowers d dates
4. The speaker .... pick up lots of plastic bottles.
   a often b sometimes c always d never

B Language Functions

2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Sara : Did you hear about the Random Acts of Kindness Day?

Marwa : No, I didn't. What ① .... it?

Sara : It is a ❷.................... thing that you do for someone, for no reason.

Marwa : What do you ❸..?

Sara : I mean you can do random acts of kindness for people you know or you don't know.

Marwa : Why do people want to do that?

Sara : Because they want to see a ❹.............................. on a person's face.

Marwa : Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness?

Sara : I think people ❺.. do kind things to each other.

Marwa : I agree with that.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Australia is the smallest continent of the seven continents. Some consider Australia as the largest island in the world. **<u>It</u>** is surrounded by the Indian Ocean and the Pacific Ocean. It is sometimes known as the 'island continent'. Australia is also the driest continent of the world. Australia is the sixth largest country in the world, after Russia, Canada, USA, China and Brazil. The capital city of Australia is called Canberra. The largest cities in Australia are Sydney and Melbourne. Most of Australia's population live in the eastern and southern parts of the country along the coast. A desert area known as the 'outback' covers much of the land.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What is 'Australia' sometimes known as?

....

2- What are the largest cities in Australia?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The world has .... continents.

a six b five c seven d four

4- The capital city of Australia is ....

a Canada b China c Brazil d Canberra

5- The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....

a Australia b Brazil c USA d Russia

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The woman sat in a big .... and looked at her son.
   a armchair   b curtain   c mirror   d chest of drawers
2. If you helped me, I would be so ....
   a natural   b harmful   c bored   d grateful
3. Are you .... this money is yours?
   a busy   b sorry   c sure   d necessary
4. The Roman Theatre in Alexandria is an important .... place.
   a historic   b moral   c general   d total
5. My aunt is a scientist. She works in a/an ....
   a baker's   b butcher's   c laboratory   d field
6. This book is fantastic, you .... read it.
   a shouldn't   b should   c don't have to   d has to
7. The apples are .... by me.
   a eat   b eating   c ate   d eaten
8. Where .... you buy this shirt?
   a does   b have   c did   d are
9. There's the office .... you can buy the tickets.
   a which   b where   c when   d who
10. Do you know how Koushari is ....?
    a made   b to make   c making   d make

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Gamil <u>is having</u> four cars. All of them are expensive. (..........)
2- They were waiting for the bus when the accident <u>was happening</u>. (..........)
3- You <u>should</u> eat too much bread. It's not healthy. (..........)
4- Should I read this story <u>who</u> you lent me? (..........)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"How life used to be different in ancient Egypt"

....

....

....

Test 16

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tanta is located in the .... of Egypt.
   a north b south c east d west
2. Lots of .... is grown in the area.
   a fruit b vegetables c cotton d trees
3. Tanta is known for its delicious ....
   a cakes b buns c bread d sweets
4. Tanta has a beautiful .... called Al-Ahmadi.
   a mosque b university c school d park

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Teacher : The ice is melting on top of Mount Kilimanjaro.

Student : What is Mount Kilimanjaro?

Teacher : It is Africa's highest mountain.

Student : ① .... is happening to Mount Kilimanjaro?

Teacher : The warmer weather is ② .... the ice on top of it.

Student : That means there was more ice on the mountain. Now, there is less ice around Mount Kilimanjaro ③ .... before.

Teacher : You are ④ ....

Student : It's bad news! ⑤ .... there good news?

Teacher : Yes, the good news is that ice is not melting as fast as before.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I live in a nice city. In my city, there is a post office where people mail letters. On Monday, I go to work. I work at the post office. Everyone goes shopping at the supermarket. They also eat at the restaurant. The restaurant serves pizza and ice cream.

My friends and I go to the park. We like to play football at the park. On Fridays, we go to the cinema to see a movie. Children don't go to school in the weekend. Each day, people go to the hospital when they are sick. The doctors and nurses take care of them. The police keep everyone safe. I am happy to live in my city.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the writer work?

....

2. When does the writer go to the cinema?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The writer feels .... about his city.
a happy b bored c sad d unsafe

4- People buy food at the ....
a hospital b park c cinema d supermarket

5- Who keeps everyone safe?
a The nurses b The children c The police d The doctors

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People use .... to keep light out.
a carpets b curtains c mirrors d wardrobes
2. It is quite .... for children to be afraid of the dark.
a grateful b pleased c friendly d normal
3. This brave man made .... efforts to save the child from fire.
a heroic b terrible c quiet d delicious
4. A big storm .... the ship and it sank in the sea.
a mixed b damaged c managed d completed
5. We put rubbish in ....
a phones b pencil cases c bowls d bins
6. History is a subject .... I find interesting, but difficult.
a where b who c which d when
7. Food .... in a fridge not to become bad.
a keeps b is kept c is keeping d keep
8. While Shady .... out of the classroom, he fell down.
a ran b is running c runs d was running
9. We .... keep our money and jewellery in a safe place.
a mustn't b have c must d shouldn't
10. What kind of food .... this restaurant serve?
a do b does c is d was

4) Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona **listens** to the radio now. (..................)
2. While John **slept** last night, someone stole his car. (..................)
3. You **shouldn't** study hard to get better at English. (..................)
4. 1st July is the day **which** I was born. (..................)

E Writing

5) Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"A description of a historic place you visited"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 17

A Listening

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker's mother is an important ....
   a teacher b nurse c doctor d vet
2. She studied to be a nurse at .... University.
   a Cairo b Alexandria c Ain Shams d Benha
3. She got a job at a big .... in Cairo.
   a school b workshop c factory d hospital
4. She is also a manager and she helps to teach .... nurses.
   a younger b older c taller d shorter

B Language Functions

2) Complete the following dialogue:

Student : Hello, my teacher.

Teacher : Hello, my dear student.

Student : I have a problem and I want you to solve it for me.

Teacher : What ❶ .... it?

Student : My friends found a ❷ .... in the playground at break.

Teacher : And then?

Student : We didn't ❸.. whose bag it was.

Teacher : They ❹.......... look inside the bag to find the owner's name and address.

Student : We did that and knew his name, but he left the playground.

Teacher : Someone should ❺...................... after him and give the bag back.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nowadays, there are many environment problems like water and air problems. One of the main sources of these problems is rubbish. The rubbish increases every day. We can find many types of rubbish everywhere. Rubbish may consist of food, plastic and many other things. This rubbish comes from many places, such as, houses, schools, factories, and so on.

We can reduce our paper use by using both sides of the paper when we write. We must reduce using plastic bags. We have to reuse our old plastic bags at home, because plastic is one of the difficult things to end up. We can recycle our own useless things to be something useful. We must reduce, reuse and recycle rubbish to solve its problems.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main source of the environment problems?

....

2- Where does the rubbish come from?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- We have to .... our old plastic bags at home.

a cycle　b reuse　c increase　d print

4- We can reduce our .... use by using both sides of the paper.

a food　b air　c water　d paper

5- We can recycle our .... things to solve rubbish problems.

a useless　b hopeless　c endless　d homeless

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a .... who lives in London. I send him a letter weekly.

a worker　b penfriend　c baby　d waiter

2. A .... is a young person between the ages of 13 and 19.

a baby　b teenager　c child　d police officer

3. At last we have a good .... for our company.
a professor b headmaster c farmer d manager

4. A .... is the daughter of a king or queen.
a prince b beggar c princess d farmer

5. Everyone .... do a random act of kindness sometimes.
a have to b should c shouldn't d mustn't

6. The young woman put the chest of drawers in front .... the bed.
a to b in c on d of

7. What subject .... you use to like when you were young?
a do b did c does d has

8. Hamada and Salah always .... their books on that bookshelf.
a keep b keeps c keeping d are keeping

9. My bedroom .... every day by my mum.
a cleans b is clean c is cleaned d is cleaning

10. It's is a famous charity .... we donate money to.
a who b where c which d whose

5) **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Ola visited her sister in London **next** year. (........)

2- Football is **most** exciting than volleyball. (........)

3- We should **are** kind to poor people. (........)

4- Dina **don't** clean the house alone, her sister helped her. (........)

E Writing

6) **Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"An object in your home"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test 18

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... people play chess.
   a Four b Three c Two d Five
2. Each person has got white or .... pieces.
   a red b yellow c orange d black
3. Chess is not a/an .... game.
   a bad b good c easy d fat
4. Some people play it for .... hours or more.
   a six b seven c eight d nine

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak : I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.
Rawia : I'm not ❶ .... Some of them work very hard.
Malak : Do you mean they don't need to work for a charity?
Rawia : Yes, I think so.
Malak : Why do you ❷ .... that?
Rawia : I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity.
Malak : I think that it's important for them to ❸ .... money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.
Rawia : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.
Malak : I see ❹ .... you mean. Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.
Rawia : Good ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

George and his father are at the pet store. They want to get a pet for George's birthday. First, George sees dogs and cats. Baby dogs are called puppies. Baby cats are called kittens. George likes them because they are easy to take care of and can play a lot but they will get bigger. George wants a small pet. George sees a parrot.

He likes it, but he doesn't want to clean the cage. George sees animals in tanks. The tanks full of water have fish and turtles in them. George decides he wants to get a turtle for his birthday. He buys a book on how to take care of a turtle and a list of what types of turtles the store has.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why does George go to the pet store?

....

2. What are baby cats called?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Fish and turtles are put in a ....

a cage b tank c hut d tent

4- The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....

a parrot b turtle c fish d cat

5- To know how to take care of a turtle, George ....

a asks the seller b buys a book c watched a video d went online

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We like to eat by the light of the ....

a mirror b lamp c lamb d carpet

2. You shouldn't leave your little sister .... in the house.

a alive b alone c awake d abroad

3. I'm .... to fly in an airplane.

a scared b dear c scary d heavy

4. Drinking milk is good .... our teeth and bones.

a to b from c in d for

5. I can fly a kite .... I can't ride a bike.

a because b so c but d not

6. You .... pass your exams to go to university.

a should b don't have to c have to d shouldn't

7. Hossam didn't .... to study well when he was young.

a use b uses c using d is used

8. Nouran never draws but these days she .... a lot.

a draws   b drawing   c is drawing   d draw

9. Mayar is more careful .... Sara.

a than   b as   c the   d most

10. Ali is the manager .... we all like.

a where   b when   c what   d who

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Habiba always **help** her mum clean the kitchen. (..............)

2- While I was walking home, I **meet** Huda. (..............)

3- This theatre **is used to** show wonderful plays in the past. (..............)

4- This jacket is **make** in China. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What we can do to protect the environment"

Test 19 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona: Do you like ① ....?
Heba : Yes, I do.
Mona: Where do you have your science ② ....?
Heba : We have our science lessons in the ③ ....
Mona: Where is it?
Heba : It's ④ .... to the library.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Amr** : ....?
Tamer : Matrouh is located in the north-west of Egypt.

2- **Mustafa** : What sports do you like?
Hamza : ....

3 Read and match:

A	B
① Flood	ⓐ is a building where you can pray.
② Mosque	ⓑ is a plant used for making clothes.
③ What time	ⓒ is animals and plants that live in natural conditions.
④ Cotton	ⓓ is large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before.
⑤ Wildlife	ⓔ do you go to bed at the weekend?
	ⓕ something you buy to remember a holiday.

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Everyone should visit the historical places in Egypt. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way away. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should everyone visit?

----

2. Where is the Citadel?

----

3. Why did Salah al-Din build the Citadel?

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ---------- do your homework at the same time every day.
   a has to b aren't c have to d don't have to
2. We should do more efforts to stop air and water ---------- .
   a pollution b project c experience d race
3. I was doing my homework when my friend ---------- .
   a was calling b calls c called d call
4. Thank you ---------- coming to the party.
   a on b for c at d in
5. That is the house ---------- my grandfather was born.
   a who b which c where d when

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We sleep in the **bathroom**. (----------)

2- I didn't **liked** swimming when I was young. (----------)

3- I'm looking **before** my brother when is mum away. (----------)

4- Ahmed is cleverer **then** Sameh. (----------)

5- This museum is **visiting** by tourists every day. (----------)

7 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"a charity which helps poor people"

Test 20 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa : What's your name?

Tourist : ❶ ....

Mustafa : ❷ .... name's Lino.

Tourist : I'm from Italy. .... are you from?

Mustafa : How ❸ .... brothers and sisters do you have?

Tourist : I ❹ .... two brothers and one sister.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Taher** : ---?

Ramy : You can take a taxi to go to the bank.

2- **Sameh** : What's your favourite subject?

Muhammad : ---.

3 Read and match:

A	B
① What	ⓐ a bedroom with my brother.
② Souvenir	ⓑ is looking after patients at a hospital.
③ The doctor	ⓒ used to live in the countryside.
④ You should	ⓓ is something you buy to remember a holiday.
⑤ My grandfather	ⓔ be kind to strangers.
	ⓕ do you do in your free time?

Answer 1. -------- 2. -------- 3. -------- 4. -------- 5. --------

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I work far from my home, almost 50 kilometres away. I have to wake up early every morning. There's never enough time for a breakfast. At exactly 6:00 a.m., I get into my car and start the long drive. The drive to work takes about one hour. Going back home in the evening after work takes even longer, maybe around 70 minutes. I think about trying to take the train to work instead of driving. That way, I could still listen to my music with headphones, and even read a novel at the same time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When does the writer wake up every morning?

....

2. What does the writer think he/she could do if he/she took a train to work?

....

3. Do you prefer to go to your work in your car or by train? Why?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like my job, ... I'm feeling tired tonight.
   a but   b because   c so   d for
2. I visited the Karnak Temple and saw the .... monuments.
   a modern   b new   c ancient   d cheap
3. In a museum, you .... touch the objects.
   a mustn't   b must   c are   d have
4. A .... is a large area of land with few plants and little water.
   a dessert   b desert   c river   d valley
5. You .... spend too much time on social media.
   a should   b has to   c have to   d shouldn't

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What <u>are</u> your father doing? (..............)
2- I <u>does</u> my homework every day. (..............)
3- Mr Muhammad speaks English <u>good</u>. (..............)
4- While I was <u>studied</u>, the phone rang. (..............)
5- Please, give me back the pen <u>who</u> I lent you. (..............)

7 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your favourite place in Egypt"

....

....

....

Listening material

Unit 1

My grandmother and grandfather live in Alex. They live next to the beach. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them; but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours.

Unit 2

I am a nurse. I look after patients at a hospital. I look after children in children's ward. I am feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.

Unit 3

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to a bigger flat a year later when I was born.

Review A

I used to work as an engineer. Then I saw a job advertisement for engineers to work in a big factory for a year and I thought it looked interesting.

Unit 4

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone. It has beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London.

Unit 5

One day, Eman found some money. She went to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she came out, she saw a beggar and gave the begger most of her cakes.

Unit 6

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. Lots of cotton is grown in the area. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

Review B

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. We arrived at 10.30 a.m. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. The museum has some very old objects. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools.

End of term practice

My name's Aya. My father goes out for work every morning. He's a street-food seller. I must stay at home to look after my brothers and sisters. I have to go to the shops in the evenings to do the shopping. When I get home I feel tired but grateful.

Test 1

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to a bigger flat a year later when I was born.

Test 2

We're going on a boat trip today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. You should be careful.

Test 3

I'm looking after patients at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in children's ward. I like my job but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.

Test 4

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects.

Test 5

I live with my family in Cairo. My family and I always go on trips around Egypt. We like going to Al Azhar Park. We always have fun there.

Test 6

Port Said is located in the north -east of Egypt. The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Test 7

I usually get up at 6.30 and help mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early. That is why he does not have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work.

Test 8

The British made a special ship for the Cleopatra's Needle in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

Test 9

The girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes.

Test 10

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city is known for its delicious 'black honey'. Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the city.

Test 11

I visited Athens with my family last year. There was so much to see: Roman theatres, temples and museums! I'm not usually very interested in history, but these places are awesome!

Test 12

I'm Marwa. I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner.

Test 13

We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935, in Bilbeis. His father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Many ill children can now live healthy lives.

Test 14

Last weekend, eight students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

Test 15

I work as a volunteer for a charity. At the weekend, I go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. I always pick up lots of plastic bottles.

Test 16

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. Lots of cotton is grown in the area. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Tanta's has a beautiful mosque called Al-Ahmadi.

Test 17

My mother is an important nurse. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University. She got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She became one of the most important nurses in Cairo. She is also a manager and she helps to teach younger nurses.

Test 18

Two people play chess. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more.